Taxonomy and phylogeny of the three marine diatom genera, Crucidenticula, Denticulopsis and Neodenticula

Yukio YANAGISAWA* and Fumio AKIBA**

YANAGISAWA, Y. and AKIBA, F. (1990) Taxonomy and phylogeny of the three marine diatom genera, *Crucidenticula*, *Denticulopsis* and *Neodenticula*. *Bull. Geol. Surv. Japan*, vol. 41(5), p. 197-301.

Abstract: Taxonomic refinements are made on some 30 taxa belonging to the marine diatom genera, *Crucidenticula*, *Denticulopsis* and *Neodenticula*, and their most probable evolutionary lineages are presented based on their morphology as well as their stratigraphic and geographic distributions. Fifteen new species and varieties are herein described, and two new combinations are established. They are, in alphabetical order, *Crucidenticula kanayae* var. *pacifica* n. var., *C. paranicobarica* var. *tropica* n. var., *C. sawamurae* n. sp., *Denticulopsis barronii* n. sp., *D. crassa* n. sp., *D. delicata* n. sp., *D. dimorpha* var. *areolata* n. var., *D. ichikawae* n. sp., *D. okunoi* n. sp., *D. ovata* (SCHRADER) n. comb., *D. praedimorpha* var. *minor* n. var., *D. praedimorpha* var. *robusta* n. var., *D. praedimorpha* var. *intermedia* n. var., *D. praekatayamae* n. sp., *D. simonsenii* n. sp., *D. tanimurae* n. sp. and *D. vulgaris* (OKUNO) n. comb.

I. Introduction

The late Cenozoic diatom genera *Crucidenticula, Denticulopsis* and *Neodenticula* include many short-ranging and widely distributed taxa, most of which are extremely valuable for the Neogene diatom biostratigraphy. The diatom taxa included in these three genera had long been recognized as "marine species of *Denticula* KÜTZING" (SIMONSEN and KANAYA, 1961), and were later placed in the genus *Denticulopsis* by SIMONSEN (1979), until AKIBA and YANAGISAWA (1986) recently clarified their generic distinctions.

The number of taxa of this species group has been greatly increased as their biostratigraphic utility has become clear (Fig. 1). When SIMONSEN and KANAYA (1961) made taxonomic revision of this group, only five species were known. Over a decade later, SCHRADER (1973a, b) recognized 12 taxa, adding many new forms, and he first suggested a possible evolutionary lineage of this diatom group. However, his idea is basically contradictory to ours in that this diatom group is not monogenetic but clearly polygenetic. By the successive descriptions of new forms or refinements of previously described species (MCCOL-LUM, 1975; SCHRADER, 1976; SCHRADER and Fenner, 1976; Akiba, 1982, 1986; Maruya-MA, 1984a; AKIBA and YANAGISAWA, 1986; TANIMURA, 1989), some 20 taxa have been counted in our recent synthesis of the taxonomic and morphological details of this diatom group (AKIBA and YANAGISAWA, 1986).

The main purpose of our previous paper was to circumscribe the specific concepts of the group as clearly as possible in order to

^{*} Geology Department

^{**} JAPEX Research Center (Japan Petroleum Exploration Co. Ltd.)



Bulletin of the Geological Survey of Japan, Vol. 41, No. 5

Fig. 1 Taxonomic history of taxa of the genera Crucidenticula, Denticulopsis and Neodenticula.

better understand its stratigraphic significance. Another aim of our study was to trace the evolutionary lineage of these taxa. However, we could not complete this study because available evidence useful for the purpose was not extensive at that time. Continued study during the last several years allows us to propose the most probable phylogenetic relationship of this species group based on the latest information available. This diatom group now includes more than 30 taxa, many of which are newly described here. The taxonomic relationship, morphological diagnoses and time-and-space distribution of this group are described in detail as well.

II. Materials and methods

For biostratigraphic study, samples from the Lower Miocene through Pliocene sequences of DSDP Site 438 (Hole A, Cores 1 -85; Hole B, Cores 6-16) and the Lower Miocene to Upper Miocene sections of DSDP Site 77 (Hole B, Cores 17-24) and Site 71 (Cores 19-29) were analyzed.

Holes 438A and 438B are located in the northwestern Pacific, off northeast Honshu of Japan (Fig. 2), containing the most complete reference sections for the Lower Miocene through Quaternary North Pacific diatom biostratigraphy (BARRON, 1980; AKIBA *et al.*, 1982; MARUYAMA, 1984b; KOIZUMI, 1985; ODA, 1986; AKIBA, 1986; ORESHKINA and RADIONOVA, 1987). In this study, the samples analyzed by AKIBA *et al.* (1982), MARUYAMA (1984b) and AKIBA (1986) and those deposited in DSDP Reference Center in the National

Science Museum (Tokyo) are re-examined with special attention to the three genera treated in this paper.

Holes 77B and 71 were drilled in the eastern equatorial Pacific (Fig. 2), and offer one of the most valuable Lower Miocene to Middle Miocene sections for the diatom biostratigraphy of this area (BARRON, 1981b, 1983, 1985a). We examined the slides of some selected samples studied by BARRON (1983, 1985a).

For taxonomic study, especially for SEM observation, several selected samples from on-land sequences of Japan and from deep-sea cores in the Southern Ocean were used as well as the DSDP samples mentioned above.

Preparation method for LM studies varied but mostly followed KOIZUMI and TANIMURA (1985), BARRON (1983) and MARUYAMA (1984a). For SEM observation, samples were prepared after AKIBA and YANAGISAWA (1986).

One hundred diatom valves were counted for each sample at $1000 \times$ magnification. After the counting, each slide was scanned to record other species missed during the count-



Fig. 2 Geographic locations of DSDP sites examined in this study (solid circles) and the Southern Ocean DSDP sites of which diatom stratigraphic records are used to summarize stratigraphic ranges of taxa treated in this paper (open circles). ing. The copulae of *Denticulopsis praedimorpha*, *D. barronii*, *D. dimorpha*, *D. crassa* and *Neodenticula* species were counted separately during the routine counting of valves, because they serve to identify these species rather easily. Resting spores of *Chaetoceros* were also counted separately at the DSDP Site 438.

Several biometrical parameters (e.g. valve length and width) were measured for some taxa to obtain objective diagnostic criteria, using a micrometer scale in LM.

III. Morphology and terminology

Some of the common characteristic structures to the three genera are discussed, since there has been serious confusion or misinterpretation concerning the valve structures of this diatom group. They are clarified here with illustrations of frustules of the genus *Denticulopsis* (Figs. 3-5). General morphological terms are after ANONYMOUS (1975) and ROSS *et al.* (1979) and special terms for this diatom group are used after SIMONSEN and KANAYA (1961), AKIBA (1979), MARUYAMA (1984a, 1988) and AKIBA and YANAGISAWA (1986) with some modifications. Basic characteristics of the three genera are summarized in Table 1.

Primary pseudoseptum : The primary pseudoseptum, a basic valve structure common to the three genera, penetrates very deeply and forms complete chambers of the valve interior. At the basal part, it accompanies a capitate end, which was called a "crossbar" of septum by SIMONSEN and KANAYA (1961). The "crossbar" is, however, not a element of septum (=copula) but



Fig. 3 Composition of frustule of Denticulopsis lauta (BAILEY) SIMONSEN.



Fig. 4 Frustule of *Denticulopsis simonsenii* n. sp. A : inner valve view by LM ; B : outer valve view by SEM ; C : inner valve view by SEM ; D : valve view of copula ; E : broad girdle view of frustule in cross section ; F : broad girdle view of frustule by SEM ; G : broad girdle view of frustule by LM ; H, I : narrow girdle view of frustule by SEM, showing a lingula (li) and an antilingula (al) of the first pleura ; J : cross-sectional view at marginal rib(mr) ; K : cross-sectional view at secondary pseudoseptum (sp) ; L : cross-sectional view at primary pseudoseptum (pp) and basal ridge (br) ; M : inner valve structure.



Bulletin of the Geological Survey of Japan, Vol. 41, No. 5

Fig. 5 Valve structure of *Denticulopsis simonsenii* n. sp. A : valve without valve face and mantle; B_1 : deck of valve; B_2 : valve without deck.

belongs to the valve as SIMONSEN (1979) pointed out. This term is, therefore, inadequate in usage according to ROSS *et al.* (1979). Instead of this term, MARUYAMA (1984a) introduced a name, "tuzumi" after a Japanese traditional hand drum, whose outline is very similar to this structure. However, this term seems also to be inadequate because it is exotic among other morphological terms which are named in Latin or European languages. In this paper, this capitate structure is termed a **basal ridge**.

Although it has sometimes been called merely a "pseudoseptum", the term "primary pseudoseptum" is used in this paper to avoid confusion with secondary and apical pseudoDiatom genera Crucidenticula, Denticulopsis and Neodenticula (Y. Yanagisawa and F. Akiba)

| | Crucidenticula | Denticulopsis | Neodenticula |
|-------------------------------|--|---|---|
| Morphology | | | |
| Punctation | Coarse (0.4-0.55 µm in diameter) | Fine (less than 0.1 μm in diameter) | Very fine (indiscernible in LM) |
| Location of Marginal ribs | Between each two transapical striae on both sides | Between each two pseudosepta on both sides | Formed by branching of pseudosepta, only on raphe side |
| Location of portulae of raphe | About two between each two pseudosepta | One between each two pseudosepta | One between each two marginal ribs |
| Raphe slit | Divided | Divided | Continuous |
| Stratigraphic range | 17.8-10.6 Ma | 16.4-7.9 Ma | 7.2-0 Ma |
| Ancestor | Nitzschia maleinterpretaria | <i>a Nitzschia</i> species resembling <i>N. challengeri</i> | Nitzschia rolandii |
| Geographic distribution | Originally and mainly in the low-latitude, later expanded to the middle- to high-latitude | Originally and mainly in the middle- to high- latitude, later expanded to the low-latitude | Endemic in the high- latitude in the Nothern Hemisphere |

Table 1 Characteristics of the genera Crucidenticula, Denticulopsis and Neodenticula.

septa.

Secondary pseudoseptum: This pseudoseptum is differentiated from the primary pseudoseptum in that it does not penetrate very deeply and that it lacks a basal ridge. It is present only in some limited species.

Apical pseudoseptum: This term was proposed by MARUYAMA (1988) for a shallow pseudoseptum which is recognized near the apex in some valves of *Denticulopsis lauta* and its related species. It is very similar to the secondary pseudoseptum in lacking a basal ridge, but differs from the latter in that it is located only near apex and not located between primary pseudosepta and that it is not present all valves of *D. lauta*. This pseudoseptum is also recognized in *D. praedimorpha*, *N. kamtschatica* and their related taxa.

Apical costa : This structure is a shallow costa situated near each apex, consisting of a transapical costa and two or three longitudinal costae running to the apex. MARUYAMA (1984a, 1988) called these longitudinal costae "apical branchings".

Marginal rib: This is a short thickening which protrudes inward from the valve mantle between pseudosepta. Though this structure was originally named a "marginal rib-like wall thickening" by SIMONSEN and KANAYA (1961), it is here termed merely a marginal rib for simplicity. The distribution pattern of marginal ribs is one of the most diagnostic features that distinguish the three genera (Table 1; AKIBA and YANAGISAWA, 1986).

Deck: This is a plate, which would correspond to the deck of ship if the valve of *Denticulopsis* were a ship. The deck is sometimes isolated (Pl. 8, Fig. 16).

Chamber: This is a space or interval formed between each two primary pseudosepta (MARUYAMA, 1988).

Raphe: The raphe of normal vegetative valve is situated along the valve edge, but that of the initial valve is located along the valve center (Pl. 2, Figs. 38, 44, 45; Pl. 3, Fig. 29; Pl. 5, Figs. 20, 42; Pl. 9, Figs. 10, 11; Pl. 10, Figs. 3-9). The raphe canal is a round tube with inner portulae. The raphe of *Crucidenticula*

Bulletin of the Geological Survey of Japan, Vol. 41, No. 5

or *Denticulopsis* is interrupted at the middle, divided into two branches of raphe, whereas that of *Neodenticula* is continuous. Indistinct central and terminal pores of raphe are observed by SEM. The distribution pattern of portulae is unique to each of the three genera (Table 1; AKIBA and YANAGISAWA, 1986).

Punctation: The valve face and valve mantle are perforated by puncta which form transapical striae. The puncta are arranged in clear quincunx so that oblique rows are formed in Denticulopsis, Neodenticula and the younger group of Crucidenticula, whereas those of the older group of *Crucidenticula* are in non-quincunx arrangement. The size of puncta is one of the most important features that distinguish the three genera (Table 1). The puncta of Crucidenticula are large enough to recognize their shape in ordinary LM observation, with each punctum occluded by a cross -shaped rota. The puncta of Denticulopsis are fine, but they are easily discernible in LM with high magnification. Denticulopsis has two types of punctation ; single- and double-layered types. The former (S-type) is a single perforated wall (Pl. 12, Fig. 4), whereas the later (D-type) is composed of outer fine perforation and inner coarse punctation (Pl. 9, Fig. 7; Pl. 12, Figs. 15, 16). The puncta of *Neodenticula* are too fine to recognize in ordinary LM observation. They can be seen only by oblique illumination in LM (Pl. 7, Figs. 30, 37).

The distribution patterns of puncta on the valve face can be classified into the following three basic types; full punctation, reduced punctation and hyaline (the absence of puncta) (Fig. 6).

Cingulum: The cingulum of the three genera is basically composed of a **copula** (intercalary band) and three **pleurae** (connecting bands) (Fig. 3). Since this diatom group was previously believed to posses only a single band in its theca (SIMONSEN, 1979), the copula has been erroneusly called a connecting band (AKIBA, 1979, 1982; MARUYAMA, 1984a).

The copulae of the three genera are classi-



Fig. 6 Distribution patterns of puncta on valve face.

fied into four types as follows (Fig. 7): open band with non-punctated sides (Con)

> open band with punctated sides (Cop) closed band with a serrate edge (Ccr) closed band with a smooth edge (Ccm)

The copula has a **septum-like** plate (GOTOH, 1984), a plate projecting in valvar plane from the edge of copula into the valve interior (Fig. 4, M). This plate has pairs of inner extensions (KANAYA, 1959), which correspond to the basal ridges of valve and combine the valve (Fig. 7, Con). In Denticulopsis and copula dimorpha and D. ovata, these extensions extrude from both sides to form a cross rod (Fig. 7, Ccm). The cross rods are also developed partially in D.praedimorpha var. robusta and var. intermedia. The closed copula of the advanced varieties of Denticulopsis praedimor*bha* have a silicified inner apical thickening at each apex (Fig. 7, Ccr).

The pleurae are all non-punctated open



Fig. 7 Types of copula in the genera *Crucidenticula, Denticulopsis, Neodenticula* and their related species. Con: open band with non-punctated sides (*Denticulopsis simonsenii*); Cop: open band with punctated sides (*Crucidenticula sawamurae*); Ccr: closed band with a serrate edge (*Denticulopsis praedimorpha* var. *praedimorpha*); Ccm: closed copula with a smooth edge (*Denticulopsis dimorpha* var. *dimorpha*).

bands. The first and third ones $(P_1 \text{ and } P_3)$ are narrow and the second one (P_2) is broad (Fig. 3).

Each of copula and pleurae has a lingula and an antilingula at the closed apex (Fig. 4, H). The lingulae of the first and third pleurae are high and distinct, while those of copula and the second pleura are low and indistinct.

Polymorphism: Some species of *Denticulopsis* show clear polymorphism. *Denticulopsis* praelauta and probably the primitive form of *Denticulopsis lauta* have three types of frustules formed by combinations of two types of copulae (Cop, Con). Polymorphism of *Denticulopsis praedimorpha*, *D. barronii* and *D. dimorpha* is more complicated due to the

| Table 2 | Valve types in Denticulopsis praedi- |
|---------|--------------------------------------|
| | morpha, D. barronii, D. dimorpha |
| | and D. ovata with their correspond- |
| | ing copulae. |

| Type of valve | Corresponding copula | Аківа (1979, 1982) Магичама (1984 а) |
|------------------|-------------------------|---|
| Vo | Сор | shallower valve |
| Vc | Ccr, Ccm | deeper valve |

combinations of three types of copulae (Cop, Ccr and Ccm). In addition, these species have two types of valves ; Types Vo and Vc (Table 2). The Vo valve combines with open copula, whereas the Vc valve corresponds to closed copula. These Vo and Vc valves are called shallower and deeper valves, respectively by AKIBA (1979, 1982) and MARUYAMA (1984a). However, their terminology is inadequate because the two types of valves are not much different in depth.

The three types of copulae might theoretically form nine (3×3) combinations in frustule (Table 3). However, not all of them have been recognized so far.

| Table 3 | Frustule types formed by combination of |
|---------|---|
| | three types of copulae in Denticulopsis |
| | praedimorpha. Numbers indicate plate- |
| | figure numbers in this paper. |

| Hypocopula | Сор | Epicopula Ccr | Ccm |
|------------|----------|------------------|----------|
| Сор | Pl. 4-5 | _ | _ |
| Ccr | Pl. 4-17 | Pl. 4-35 | + |
| Ccm | Pl. 5-10 | Pl. 5-11 | Pl. 5-12 |

+: recognized,

- : not recognized at present

IV. Stratigraphic ranges

Tables 4-6 present the stratigraphic occurrence charts of the taxa of *Denticulopsis*, *Crucidenticula* and *Neodenticula* with some related and marker species at DSDP Holes 438A, 438B, 77B and 71, respectively. For Holes 438 A and 438B, the North Pacific diatom zones of AKIBA (1986) are utilized with slight modification of age controls of the Middle to Late Miocene after ODA (1986). The low-latitude diatom zones of BURCKLE (1972) and BARRON (1983, 1985a, b) are applicable for DSDP Holes 71 and 77B.

As stated by BARRON (1985b), late Cenozoic diatom stratigraphic studies have developed different zonations for three main areas of the oceans: the middle- to high-latitude North Pacific, the low-latitude areas (eastern equatorial Pacific and tropical Indian Ocean) and the Southern Ocean (Antarctic and sub-Antarctic), because each area contains largely an endemic diatom assemblage. In this paper, therefore, the stratigraphic range of the taxa of the genera *Crucidenticula, Denticulopsis, Neodenticula* and their related species are shown separately for these three areas, using different biostratigraphic zonations.

Figure 8 shows summarized stratigraphic ranges of taxa treated in this paper in the middle- to high-latitude North Pacific. This figure is based on this study at DSDP Holes 438A and 438B and several previous studies (AKIBA and ICHINOSEKI, 1983; BARRON, 1985b, AKIBA, 1985, 1986, KOIZUMI and TANIMURA, 1985). The Miocene North Pacific diatom assemblage is represented by the abundant occurrence of highly diversified Denticulopsis species. The genus Crucidenticula is lower in abundance and less diversified than in the low -latitude area. From the Pliocene through the Quaternary, the abundant occurrence of the genus Neodenticula characterizes the diatom assemblage in this region.

Figure 9 presents stratigraphic ranges of the taxa of *Denticulopsis*, *Crucidenticula* and their

related species in the low-latitude area. This is mainly based on this study at DSDP Holes 71 and 77B, as well as those of BARRON (1983, 1985a, b). In the low-latitude areas, a number of *Crucidenticula* species occur abundantly in the Lower to Middle Miocene sequences, whereas *Denticulopsis* is apparently lower both in diversity and abundance than in the middle- to high-latitude North Pacific. No *Neodenticula* species occurs in this region.

As we have not yet thoroughly examined the Southern Ocean diatom assemblage, stratigraphic ranges of the taxa treated in this study are compiled for the Southern Ocean (Fig. 10) from previous biostratigraphic studies at DSDP Site 278 (SCHRADER, 1976), Site 266 (MCCOLLUM, 1975; WEAVER and GOMBOS, 1981) and Sites 512, 513 (CIESIELSKI, 1983), utilizing the Southern Ocean diatom zonation of WEAVER and GOMBOS (1981). Since the Miocene diatom assemblage in the Southern Ocean has very similar composition to that in the North Pacific except for several endemic species, the North Pacific diatom zonation may be employed to the Miocene intervals of the Southern Ocean (BARRON, 1985b). The stratigraphic distributions of Denticulopsis and Crucidenticula in the Southern Ocean are essentially equal to those in the middle- to high-latitude North Pacific. However, the Pliocene and Quaternary diatom assemblages are fundamentally different between the two areas; Neodenticula species, the most important constituents in the North Pacific diatom assemblage, are absent in the Southern Ocean.

V. Geographic distribution

The Recent planktonic diatom assemblage exhibits distinct latitudinal provincialism in the oceans (KANAYA and KOIZUMI, 1966). During the Miocene, however, the provincialism was not so severe as at present (SAN-CETTA, 1978); for example, there are many common species between the North Pacific and the Southern Ocean diatom assemblages Diatom genera Crucidenticula, Denticulopsis and Neodenticula (Y. Yanagisawa and F. Akiba)

Table 4 Occurrences of taxa of the genera Denticulopsis, Crucidenticula, Neodenticula and their related species in DSDP Hole 438A. Denticulopsis lauta group includes D. lauta, D. ichikawae and D. okunoi. Denticulopsis hyalina group includes D. tanimurae, D. praehyalina, D. hyalina and D. miocenica. Denticulopsis simonsenii group includes D. simonsenii, D. vulgaris, D. praekatayamae, D. katayamae, D. hustedtii and D. ovata.

| Diatom zones | Core-Section, Interval (cm) Hole 438A | Neodenticula kamtschatica | N. koizumii | N. sp. A | N. seminae | (Open copula of Neodenticula) | (Closed copula of Neodenticula) | Thalassiosira antiqua | Actinocyclus oculatus | Rhizosolenia curvirostris | Nitzschia reinholdii | N. marina | N. fossilis | Pseudoeunotia doliolus | Thalassiosira oestrupii | Resting spore of Chaetoceros |
|---------------|---|---------------------------|-------------|----------|------------|-------------------------------|---------------------------------|-----------------------|-----------------------|---------------------------|----------------------|-----------|-------------|------------------------|-------------------------|------------------------------|
| N. seminae | 1-2, 80-82 | - | - | | 8 | | 44 | - | | - | _ | _ | _ | _ | 3 | 124 |
| -1.1 Demiliae | 2-1, 10-14 | - | _ | - | 8 | _ | 17 | _ | - | 1 | 1 | 1 | - | _ | 2 | 125 |
| Rhizosolenia | 2-1, 96-98 | - | | | 2 | - | 13 | - | | l | _ | - | _ | 2 | 2 | 157 |
| curvirostris | 2-5, 5-9 | 1 | 1 | - | 3 | - | 8 | - | - | 3 | 2 | ÷ | - | 1 | 1 | 61 |
| | 3-1, 31-33 | - | - | - | 3 | - | 7 | - | + | - | l | + | ł | 2 | 4 | 84 |
| Actinocyclus | 3-3, 140-142 | 1 | - | 3 | 22 | - | 75 | - | - | 17 | - | | - | 1 | 1 | 42 |
| oculatus | 3-4, 10-14 | - | - | 3 | 24 | - | 99 | - | 3 | 10 | + | + | - | ~ | 1 | 43 |
| | 3cc | - | - | 4 | 17 | - | 48 | - | 15 | 1 | 2 | - | - | | 5 | 386 |
| | 4-1, 40-74 | - | 1 | 16 | 28 | 8 | 98 | 1 | 11 | - | + | + | - | - | 3 | 234 |
| Neodenticula | 4-4, 8-12 | 2 | 2 | 6 | 13 | 3 | 22 | 1 | 1 | - | + | + | 2 | - | + | 140 |
| koizumii | 5-2, 96-100 | - | 37 | 49 | - | 59 | - | + | + | - | + | - | | - | 2 | 48 |
| | 5cc | - | 23 | 61 | - | 53 | - | + | 1 | - | + | | - | - | - | 18 |

Note: This table also includes occurrences of some zonal maker species, but those of other species recognized in this hole are omitted for simplicity. Numbers represent valve numbers during routine 100 count. However, numbers of resting spores of *Chaetoceros* and copulae of some *Denticulopsis* and *Neodenticula* species indicate individuals encountered during 100 count of valves; + indicates valves encountered after the count; - indicates absence.

of the Miocene. However, the detailed Miocene diatom biogeography of the oceans is poorly undestood at present due to the lack of thorough studies concerning this theme.

In order to understand the geographic distribution of each taxon treated in this paper, three major provinces are roughly classified according to the regions used in the biostratigraphic part (Table 7): the middle- to high-latitude Northern Hemisphere, the low-latitude area and the Southern Ocean.

The middle- to high-latitude Northern Hemisphere includes the middle- to high-latitude circum-North Pacific (Northwest Pacific, high-latitude North Pacific and Northeast Pacific), the middle- to high-latitude North Atlantic (Norwegian Sea, Atlantic coast of the United States), and the Mediterranean and Paratethys. The low-latitude region contains the eastern equatorial Pacific and the tropical Indian Oceans. The Southern Ocean is composed of the Indian, Pacific and

Bulletin of the Geological Survey of Japan, Vol. 41, No. 5

| | | | | | | | | - | | | | _ | | | | | | | _ | | | | | | - | | | |
|------------------------------|---|-----------------------|-------------------------------------|------------------------------|----------------|----------------------------|---------------|-------------|------------------|---------------------------------------|-----------|----------------------------|-----------------------------------|---|---------------------------|-------------------------------------|---|------------------------------|--|------------------------------------|------------------------|--|---|---|-----------------------------|---|--|---|
| Diatom zone | Core-Section Interval (cm) Hole 438A | Nitzschia challengeri | Denticulopsis praelauta D. lauta | D. ichikawae D. tanimurae | D. prachyalina | D. hyalina D. miocenica | D. simonsenii | D. vulgaris | D. praekatayamae | D. katayamae D. hustedtii | D. crassa | D. praedimorpha var. minor | D. praedimorpha var. praedimorpha | D. praedimorpha var. robusta D. dimorpha var. dimorpha | D. dimorpha var. areolata | Crucidenticula kanayae var. kanayae | C. paranicobarica var. paranicobarica | c. nicovarica C. punctata | Nitzschia rolandii (primitive, asymmetric) | N. rolandii (primitive, symmetric) | N. rolandii (advanced) | Neodenticula kamtschatica | (Open copula of Neodenticula) | Thalassionema schraderi Rouxia californica | Thalassiosira praeoestrupii | T. oestrupii | ı. anıtıyua Cosmiodiscus insignis | Resting spore of Chaetoceros |
| | 6-1, 18-22 | | | | · - | | - | - | - | | - | - | - | | - | - | | | - | - | | 90 2 | 9 | | - | + | + - | 2 |
| | /-1, 19-22 | | | | | | - | - | | | - | - | - | | - | - | | | - | - | - ; | 73 I 60 0 | 1 | | | 2 | | / 0 |
| | 8-3, 30-34 | | | | • - | | [- | - | | | - | - | - | | - | - | | | - | - | | 00 2 70 | 5 | | _ | 7 | | 10 |
| | 10-2, 15-18 | | | | | | - | - | | | - | - | - | | _ | _ | | | | - | | / Z 6 0 1 | 7 | | _ | 2 | | 8 |
| | 11-6, 20-24 | | | | | | | _ | _ | | _ | 1 - | _ | | | _ | | | 1 - | _ | - (| 64 I | 2 | | _ | 2 | + | 11 |
| | 12 2 10 23 | | | | | | | _ | | | | 1 | _ | | | _ | | | | _ | - 1 | 68 | 8 | | _ | 2 | + - | 13 |
| | 16-3 36-39 | | | | | | | _ | _ | | _ | _ | _ | | | _ | | | _ | _ | - 6 | 62 1 | 7 | | _ | 6 | 3 – | 6 |
| | 18-3, 10-14 | | | | | | 1 - | | | | | Į – | _ | | | | | | | | | 4C 1 | <u> </u> | | | | 2 | 10 |
| | 19_3 10_14 | | | | _ | | _ | _ | - | | _ | 1 - | | | ~ | | | | | _ | | 45 . | 31 | | - | + | | 14 |
| | | | | | | | + | _ | _ | | _ | - | _ | | | _ | | | - | _ | _ (| 45 62 : | 3 | | _ | + | 4 - | |
| | 20-3, 26-30 | | | | | | + | - | - | | - | - | - | | - | - | | | - | - | - (| 45 62 59 1 | 3 3 1 | | - | + 1 1 | 4 – 1 – | 10 |
| | 20-3, $26-3021-3$, $20-24$ | | | | | | + | | - | | - | - | - | | - | - | | | | | - (| 45 62 59 1 65 | 3 3 1 7 | | | + 1 1 + | 4 - 1 - 1 - | 10 22 |
| | 20-3, 26-30 21-3, 20-24 22-3, 20-24 | | | | | | + | | | | | | | | | | _ · | | | | | 45 62 59 1 65 55 | 3 3 1 7 6 | | - - - 1 | + 1 + 2 | 4 - 1 - 1 - 2 - | 10 22 10 |
| | $\begin{array}{c} 13-3, & 10-14\\ 20-3, & 26-30\\ 21-3, & 20-24\\ 22-3, & 20-24\\ 23-1, & 10-14 \end{array}$ | - | | | | | - + | | | | | | | | | | - · · | | | | | 45 62 59 1 65 55 74 | 3 3 1 7 6 5 | | - - 1 | + 1 + 2 - | 4 – 1 – 1 – 2 – 4 – | 10 22 10 8 |
| | $\begin{array}{cccccccccccccccccccccccccccccccccccc$ | | | | | | - + | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | 45 62 59 1 65 55 74 61 | 3 3 1 7 6 5 7 | | - - 1 - | + 1 + 2 - 2 | 4 - 1 - 1 - 2 - 4 - - | 10 22 10 8 15 |
| | 20-3, 26-30 21-3, 20-24 22-3, 20-24 23-1, 10-14 24-3, 10-12 25-1, 35-39 | | | | | | + | | | | | - | | | | | - · · | | | | | 45 62 59 65 55 74 61 68 | 3 3 1 7 6 5 7 4 | | - - 1 - - | + 1 + 2 - 2 1 | 4 - 1 - 1 - 2 - 4 - 1 - 1 - | 10 22 10 8 15 7 |
| | 20-3, 26-30 21-3, 20-24 22-3, 20-24 23-1, 10-14 24-3, 10-12 25-1, 35-39 25-5, 16-20 | | | | | 1 - | - + | | - | | | | | | | | - · · | | | | | 45 62 59 1 65 55 74 61 68 79 1 | 3 3 1 7 6 5 7 4 0 | | - - 1 - - | + 1 + 2 - 2 1 + | 4 - 1 - 2 - 4 - 1 - 1 - + - | 10 22 10 8 15 7 14 |
| | 20-3, 26-30 21-3, 20-24 22-3, 20-24 23-1, 10-14 24-3, 10-12 25-1, 35-39 25-5, 16-20 26-2, 29-33 | | | | | | - + | | - | - | | - | | | | | | | | | | 45 62 59 1 65 55 74 61 68 79 1 80 | 3 3 1 7 6 5 7 4 0 6 | | | + 1 + 2 - 2 1 + + | 4 - 1 - 2 - 4 - 1 - 1 - + - | 10 22 10 8 15 7 14 7 |
| Neodenticula | 20-3, 26-30 21-3, 20-24 22-3, 20-24 23-1, 10-14 24-3, 10-12 25-1, 35-39 25-5, 16-20 26-2, 29-33 26-4, 10-14 | | | | | | - + | | - | | | - | | | | | | | | | | 45 62 59 1 65 55 74 61 68 79 1 80 79 | 3 1 7 6 5 7 4 0 6 8 7 | | | + 1 + 2 - 2 1 + + + | 4 – 1 – 2 – 4 – 1 – 1 – + – – – | 10 22 10 8 15 7 14 7 5 |
| Neodenticula | 20-3, 26-30 21-3, 20-24 22-3, 20-24 23-1, 10-14 24-3, 10-12 25-1, 35-39 25-5, 16-20 26-2, 29-33 26-4, 10-14 26-6, 15-19 | | | | | | | | - | | | | | | | | - · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · | | | - | | 45 62 59 1 65 74 61 68 79 1 80 79 54 51 | 3 1 7 6 5 7 4 0 6 8 7 5 | | | + 1 + 2 - 2 1 + + 1 3 | 4 - 1 - 2 - 4 - 1 - + - + - + - + - + - + | 10 22 10 8 15 7 14 7 5 6 |
| Neodenticula kamtschatica | $\begin{array}{cccccccccccccccccccccccccccccccccccc$ | | | | | | - + | | - | | | | | | | | | | | | | 45 62 59 1 65 74 61 68 79 1 68 79 1 54 51 59 | 3 3 7 6 5 7 4 0 6 8 7 5 3 | | | + 1 + 2 - 2 + + + 1 3 + | 4 – 1 – 2 – 4 – 1 – 1 – + – – – + – + – + – | 10 22 10 8 15 7 14 7 5 6 8 6 |
| Neodenticula kamtschatica | 10-37 10-14 20-3 26-30 21-3 20-24 22-3 20-24 23-1 10-14 24-3 10-12 25-1 35-39 25-5 16-20 26-2 29-33 26-4 15-19 27-2 20-24 27-4 20-24 28-2 20-24 | | | | | | - + | | - | | | | | | | | | | | | | 45 62 59 1 65 74 61 68 79 1 80 79 54 51 59 50 | 3 3 7 6 5 7 4 0 6 8 7 5 3 3 | | | + 1 + 2 1 + + 1 3 + | 4 – 1 – 2 – 4 – 1 – + – – – + – + – + – + – + + | 10 22 10 8 15 7 14 7 5 6 8 6 8 6 |
| Neodenticula kamtschatica | $\begin{array}{cccccccccccccccccccccccccccccccccccc$ | | | | | | | | - | | | | | | | | | | | | | 45 62 59 1 65 55 74 61 68 79 1 68 79 1 54 51 59 50 23 | 3 3 1 7 6 5 7 4 0 6 8 7 5 3 3 2 | | | + 1 + 2 - 2 1 + + 3 + - 3 | 4 – 1 – 2 – 4 – 1 – 1 – 1 – 1 – + – + – + – + + + + + + | 10 22 10 8 15 7 14 7 5 6 8 6 8 6 10 20 |
| Neodenticula kamtschatica | 10-3, 10-14 20-3, 20-24 22-3, 20-24 23-1, 10-14 24-3, 10-12 25-1, 35-39 25-5, 16-20 26-2, 29-33 26-4, 10-14 26-6, 15-19 27-2, 20-24 27-4, 20-24 28-2, 20-24 29-2, 20-24 29-2, 20-24 | | | | | | | | - | | | | | | | | | | | | - $ -$ | 45 62 59 1 65 55 74 61 68 79 1 68 79 1 54 51 59 50 23 38 | 3 3 1 7 6 5 7 4 0 6 8 7 5 3 3 2 3 | | | + 1 + 2 - 2 1 + + 1 3 + - 3 4 | $\begin{array}{cccccccccccccccccccccccccccccccccccc$ | 10 22 10 8 15 7 14 7 5 6 8 6 10 20 15 |

Table 4 (continued)

- 208 -

| | 32-1, 24-28 | - | - | ~ | - | - | - | - | - | + | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | | · - | - | 2 | 41 | 2 | - | - | - | 6 | + | + | 15 |
|---------------|---------------|-----|---|--------|---|--------|---|----------|----------|--------|--------|-----|----------|---|-----|---|------------|----------|---|-----|---|---|-----|------|----|--------|-------|----|------|--------|----------|-----|--------|-----|----------|
| | 33-1, 120-124 | - | - | ~ | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | + | - | - | - | - | - | | · - | 2 | 12 | 37 | 2 | - | - | 2 | 1 | 2 | - | 8 |
| | 34-1, 22-24 | - 1 | - | ~ | _ | - | _ | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | + | - | _ | - | - | - | | - - | 3 | 13 | 34 | 2 | - | - | 1 | 1 | 2 | - | 12 |
| | 35-1, 24-28 | - | _ | ~ | - | - | - | - | -1 | | - | _ | - | - | -1 | _ | - | - | - | _ | | - | | - - | 1 | 6 | 50 | 2 | | _ | _ | 1 | 2 | + | 14 |
| | 35-3, 24-28 | - 1 | _ | ~ | + | _ | _ | _ | _ | + | | - | - | - | _ | _ | + | | + | _ | | _ | | | + | 8 | 40 | 2 | _ | + | + | 2 | 8 | _ | 47 |
| | 35-6 24-28 | _ | _ | ~ | _ | _ | _ | _ | _ | _ | + | _ | _ | _ | _ | _ | _ | _ | _ | | | _ | | _ | _ | 5 | 35 | _ | _ | _ | 2 | 2 | _ | + | 76 |
| | 36-1 32-36 | I _ | _ | ~ | _ | | ~ | _ | _ | _ | _ | - | ٦ | - | _ | _ | 1 | | _ | _ | | _ | | _ | | 18 | 20 | 1 | - | _ | - | - | 7 | - | 22 |
| | 36-3 32-36 | 1 _ | _ | - | ı | | | _ | _ | 1 | _ | | _ | ~ | _ [| 1 | _ | _ | _ | | _ | | | | | 6 | 11 | 1 | _ | | <u> </u> | | 2 | - | 1/ |
| | 30-3, 32-30 | | | | 1 | | | | | т | | | | | | т | | 7 | - | - | | - | | 1 - | 2 | 26 | -T.T. | T | - | + | - | - | 2 | Ţ | 14 00 |
| | 37-3, 10-14 | - | - | _ | - | - | ~ | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | | - | - | - | | - | 2 | 20 | 2 | 1 | _ | 4 | - | - , | э 1 | + | 23 |
| | 38-1, 11-15 | - | - | - | - | - | ~ | - | -1 | _ | - | - | - | - | 2 | - | - | - | + | - | - | - | | - | - | 2 | 10 | + | - | + | - | ~ 1 | 1 | - | 3E |
| | 39-2, 11-15 | - | - | ~ | - | - | - | + | | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | | - | _ | 8 | 10 | + | - | 3 | - | - | 3 | - | 25 |
| | 40-2, 20-24 | - | - | - | - | - | + | 1 | -1 | + | - | - | - | - | - | - | T | + | - | - 1 | - | - | | 1 - | 3 | 3 | 2 | 1 | - | + | - | | T | + | 24 |
| | 40-6, 10-14 | - | - | + | - | - | - | + | - | + | - | - | + | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | | - | 5 | 15 | 17 | 2 | - | + | - | - | + | + | 19 |
| | 41-1, 45-49 | - | - | + | - | - | ~ | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | + | - | - | - | - | - | | - | 8 | 6 | 10 | 1 | - | - | - | - | 3 | + | 14 |
| | 41-3, 30-34 | - | + | - | - | + | ~ | + | - | - | - | - | + | - | - | + | + | - | - | - | - | | | - | 2 | 2 | 6 | + | - | + | - | - | + | 1 | 13 |
| | 41-6, 10-14 | - | - | - | - | - | ~ | + | - | + | - | - | + | - | - | ~ | + | - | - | - | | - | | - | 13 | 7 | 2 | + | - | + | | - | 4 | - | 26 |
| | 41cc | - | | - | _ | + | ~ | + | - | + | | - | | - | - 1 | | + | - | - | - | - | - | | - | 2 | 5 | 4 | + | - | 1 | - | | + | + | 55 |
| | 42-1, 14-18 | - | - | - | - | - | ~ | + | - | 2 | + | - | + | + | + | - | + | + | - | - | - | - | | + | 2 | + | + | - | - | 4 | - | - | + | + | 95 |
| | 42-1, 90-91 | - | - | - | - | - | ~ | 1 | - | + | + | + | + | - | + | - | - | + | + | - | - | _ | | | 1 | + | + | + | - | 5 | _ | | 1 | + | 39 |
| | 42-2, 95-96 | - | - | - | _ | _ | ~ | | _ | + | - | - | _ | - | - 1 | _ | _ | - | - | - | _ | _ | | - | + | + | + | _ | - | 9 | _ | - | 6 | + | 33 |
| Rouxia | 42-3, 15-16 | - 1 | - | + | - | _ | ~ | + | -1 | + | _ | - | _ | - | - 1 | _ | + | - | - | ~ | + | ~ | | - | 2 | + | + | + | | 5 | - | - | 1 | + | 52 |
| | 42-4, 50-54 | _ | - | - | _ | _ | + | + | - | + | _ | _ | + | - | | - | - | - | _ | _ | _ | - | | - | + | 1 | + | + | _ | 7 | | _ | + | _ | 52 |
| californica | 42-4, 73-74 | _ | _ | - | _ | _ | ~ | + | _ | + | _ | + | _ | | - | _ | - | _ | _ | -1 | _ | _ | | _ | 2 | 2 | + | _ | _ | 2 | - | _ | + | | 78 |
| | 42-5, 100-101 | _ | + | + | _ | | ~ | + | _ | 1 | _ | . – | - | - | _ | _ | + | _ | + | _ | - | _ | | _ | 2 | + | + | _ | + | 5 | | _ | ÷. | _ | 68 |
| | 42-6, 16-20 | _ | _ | _ | _ | + | ~ | _ | _ | + | ÷ | | - | - | _ | _ | + | _ | _ | _ | _ | ~ | | | 2 | 3 | т | _ | _ | 5 | _ | _ | 2 | _ 1 | 00 |
| | 43-1 59-63 | _ | _ | + | _ | _ | ~ | + | _ | | - | _ | + | _ | _ | _ | - - | | _ | _ | _ | _ | | | 2 | | + | | 1 | 5 | _ | | 1 | _ 1 | 200 |
| | 43-3 30-34 | | _ | | _ | _ | - | <u> </u> | _ | | - | _ | <u>.</u> | _ | - | _ | 1 | | _ | | _ | | | - | 5 | - T | - T | | -1 | 5 | - | _ | - | | 07 |
| | 43-6 82-86 | | | 1 | | - | | 1 | - | - | + | _ | | | - | | - <u>-</u> | <u>т</u> | | -+- | | - | | - | 2 | | | - | 25 | + | | | + | | 20 |
| | 45 0, 02 00 | | _ | | _ | - - | _ | 1 | <u>_</u> | г 1 | - - | | - | | | - | Ť | - | - | 71 | - | - | | - | 10 | т 2 | - | - | 20 | 1 2 | - | | - | | 130 |
| | 44-1, 00-04 | | _ | т | _ | - | - | 1 | | 1 | - | - | Ŧ | - | 71 | 1 | Ŧ | Ŧ | - | Ŧ | - | Ŧ | | - | 10 | 5 | - | - | 29 | 3 | - | - | - | - 1 | 1/4 |
| | 44-3, 10-14 | - | - | T I | - | - | ~ | T 2 | - | -1 | т | - | - | - | 1 | т | - | - | - | - | - | - | | 17 | + | + | - | - | 12 | 3 | - | - | - | - 1 | 134 |
| | 45-1, 54-58 | - | - | | - | - | ~ | 2 | ~ | + | + | + | - | - | + | - | + | + | + | - | - | ~ | + - | + | 2 | + | - | - | 36 | 2 | - | - | - | - 1 | 170 |
| | 45-6, 30-34 | - | - | + | + | - | ~ | + | - | 1 | + | - | - | - | +1 | + | + | ~ | - | + | - | - | 1 – | - | / | - | - | - | 26 | 2 | - | - | - | - 4 | 237 |
| | 46-1, 18-20 | - | _ | + | + | - | ~ | - | - | + | - | - | T | - | + | + | + | - | - | - | - | | | - | 8 | - | - | - | 16 | 1 | - | - | - | - 2 | 280 |
| Thalassionema | 46-3, 18-20 | + | - | + | + | - | ~ | + | - | 1 | - | 4 | + | - | + | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | | - | 6 | - | - | -1 | 19 . | 10 | - | - | - | - 2 | 225 |
| | 47-1, 10-14 | - | - | + | - | - | ~ | + | -1 | 1 | + | - | - | - | - | 2 | + | + | - | - | - | - | | - | 2 | ~ | - | - | 39 | 5 | - | - | - | - 1 | .72 |
| schraderi | 47-4, 110-114 | - | - | - | - | - | ~ | 1 | - | + | - | - | - | - | - | - | 1 | - | - | - | - | - | | - | 1 | - | - | - | 41 | 4 | - | - | - | - | 90 |
| | 48-1, 14-18 | - | - | 1 | + | 1 | ~ | 1 | 1 | 1 | - | + | 1 | - | + | - | - | 1 | - | - | - | | 2 - | - | 6 | | - | - | 15 | 4 | - | - | - | - 2 | 203 |
| | 48-3, 46-50 | - | - | + | - | - | - | + | - | 2 | 1 | 1 | + | - | - | + | - | - | + | + | - | - | | - | 3 | | - | - | 18 | 7 | - | - | - | - 2 | 266 |
| | 48-6, 26-30 | - | - | + | - | - | - | 1 | -1 | + | + | - | 1 | - | - | | - | - | - | -1 | - | - | 2 + | + | - | - | - | - | 17 | 1 | - | - | | - 1 | .54 |
| | 48-7, 30-31 | - | - | 1 | - | - | ~ | 1 | - | ~ | + | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | + | - | - | | | + | - | - | - | - | 16 | 2 | | - | - | - 2 | 20 |
| | 49-3, 10-14 | - | - | ~ | + | + | ~ | 1 | - | + | - | - | - | | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | | + | | | - | - | 9 | 8 | - | - | | - 1 | .62 |
| | 49-6, 10-14 | - | + | - | | - | - | 3 | - | 6 | 2 | + | - | - | + | - | + | - | - | - | - | - | | - | _ | | - | _ | 5 | 5 | | - | _ | ~ 1 | .89 |
| | 49-7, 10-11 | - 1 | + | + | - | + | - | 1 | - | 2 | - | - | ~ | - | + | - | + | | - | - | - | - | | 1 - | - | - | - | - | 5 | 5 | ~ | _ | _ | - 1 | .46 |
| | 50-1, 20-24 | - | - | - | - | | | 3 | - | 3 | ÷ | + | 1 | _ | + | + | + | - | | _ | - | - | | + | _ | | _ | _ | + | + | _ | - | _ | - 2 | 35 |
| | L | | _ | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | 1 | | | _ | | | | | | | | |

Diatom genera Crucidenticula, Denticulopsis and Neodenticula (Y. Yanagisawa and F. Akiba)

- 209 ----

| | · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · | | | | | | |
|----------------------------|--|--|---|--|--|---|---|
| Diatom zone | Core-Section Interval (cm) Hole 438A | Nitzschia challengeri Denticulopsis praelauta D. lauta D. ichikawae D. okumoi Girdle view of D. lauta group | D. tanimurae D. praehyalina D. hyalina D. miocenica Girdle view of D. hyalina group | D. simonsenii D. vulgaris D. praekatayamae D. katayamae D. hustedtii D. crassa (Closed copula) | <pre>(Luosed copula/ D-type girdle view) D. simonsenii S-type girdle view) group D. praedimorpha var. minor (Closed copula) D. praedimorpha var. praedimorpha (Closed copula) D. praedimorpha var. robusta (Closed copula)</pre> | D. dimorpha var. dimorpha (Transitional form) (Closed copula) D. dimorpha var. areolata (Closed copula) | Crucidenticula ikebei C. kanayae var. kanayae C. paranicobarica v.paranicobarica C. nicobarica C. punctata Nitzschia rolandii (primitive, Thalassiosira yabei Resting spore of Chaetoceros |
| Thalassionema schraderi | 50-3, 20-24 50-6, 20-24 50-7, 10-11 51-1, 16-20 | + | $\begin{array}{cccccccccccccccccccccccccccccccccccc$ | $ \begin{array}{cccccccccccccccccccccccccccccccccccc$ | - + + + - + 2 - + + 4 - - 2 | | |
| Denticulopsis katayamae | $\begin{array}{cccccccccccccccccccccccccccccccccccc$ | | $\begin{array}{cccccccccccccccccccccccccccccccccccc$ | $\begin{array}{cccccccccccccccccccccccccccccccccccc$ | $\begin{array}{cccccccccccccccccccccccccccccccccccc$ | | $\begin{array}{cccccccccccccccccccccccccccccccccccc$ |
| Denticulopsis dimorpha | $\begin{array}{cccccccccccccccccccccccccccccccccccc$ | | $ \begin{array}{cccccccccccccccccccccccccccccccccccc$ | $\begin{array}{cccccccccccccccccccccccccccccccccccc$ | $\begin{array}{cccccccccccccccccccccccccccccccccccc$ | $\begin{array}{cccccccccccccccccccccccccccccccccccc$ | $\begin{array}{cccccccccccccccccccccccccccccccccccc$ |
| Thalassiosira yabei | 60-1, 34-38 60-1, 134-136 60-3, 26-27 60-3, 27-29 61CC 62-1, 20-24 62-1, 80-81 | | $\begin{array}{cccccccccccccccccccccccccccccccccccc$ | $\begin{array}{cccccccccccccccccccccccccccccccccccc$ | $\begin{array}{cccccccccccccccccccccccccccccccccccc$ | | $\begin{array}{cccccccccccccccccccccccccccccccccccc$ |

Bulletin of the Geological Survey of Japan, Vol. 41, No. 5

Table 4 (continued)

| | 162-1 110-112 | 1 | _ | _ | _ | ~ | | - 1 - | _ | | _ | -1 | 22 | 1 | _ | - | 7 3 | 30 | -1 | 11 | 21 | _ | _ | 1 | 2 | + | -1 - | - | - | | - - | | | _ | - | - | _ | 15 |
|---|---------------|----|--------|----|----|-----|------|---------------|-----|-----|-----|------|----|----|---|---|-----|----|-----|-----|-----|------|-----|------|----|------|-------|---|---|-----|-------|-----|--------|----|---|-----|-----|----------|
| | 63-1, 16-20 | | _ | _ | _ | _ | | - - | · _ | - 1 | - | - | 18 | 1 | _ | - | 5 | 1 | - | - 1 | .7 | - | - | | - | | - - | - | - | - | - - | | · - | - | - | - | + | 21 |
| | 63-1, 88-89 | | _ | _ | - | _ | | - - | _ | • 1 | - | - | 18 | + | - | - | 4 | 2 | 1 | - | 4 | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | - - | | | - | - | - | + | 24 |
| | 63-1 110-112 | | _ | _ | - | _ | | | _ | 1 | _ | _ | 22 | + | _ | _ | 1 | 2 | _ | | 7 | _ | _ | 7 | _ | | _ _ | _ | - | | ~ _ | | _ | _ | _ | ~ | _ | 5 |
| | 64-1, 10-14 | | _ | _ | _ | | | - - | _ | + | - | _ | 45 | + | _ | _ | _ | + | _ | - 1 | 3 | _ | _ | _ | - | | - - | _ | | ~ . | _ _ | | | _ | _ | _ | + | 29 |
| | 64-1, 121-128 | | _ | - | _ | _ | | - - | _ | · + | - | - | 61 | È. | _ | _ | _ | 2 | - | 12 | 2 | _ | _ | _ | + | | - - | - | _ | - · | _ _ | | | _ | _ | | + | 8 |
| ······ | 64-3, 10-14 | -+ | - | - | _ | | | | - | - | - | | 61 | 1 | - | - | - | - | -1 | - 1 | 5 | 1 | 4] | 17 | 25 | 9 1 | 2 - | | - | | | | | _ | + | + | 2 | 36 |
| | 64-5, 30-32 | | | - | - | - | | - - | _ | 2 | - | - | 8 | - | - | - | - | + | - | - | 4 | 1 | 74 | 48 (| 69 | 4 | 3 – | - | _ | | - - | | | | 1 | - 1 | + | 83 |
| | 65-1, 54-56 | | + | - | - | - | | . | + | + | ~ | - | 17 | - | - | - | | + | - | - | 9 | 4 | 5 3 | 38 4 | 49 | | - - | - | - | | - - | | _ | _ | _ | - 1 | - | 40 |
| Denticulopsis | 65-3, 100-103 | | - | - | + | - | | - - | - | + | - | - | 6 | - | | - | - | + | | | 1 1 | .9 | 74 | 46 : | 26 | | - - | _ | - | | - - | | _ | _ | 1 | - 1 | - | 40 |
| praedimorpha | 65-5, 18-20 | | + | - | - | - | | - | ~ | 2 | ~ | - | 46 | - | - | - | - | 8 | 1 | 4 | 8 | 8 | 7 | - | - | | - - | - | - | | - - | • + | - | - | + | - 1 | - | 15 |
| | 65-7, 17-18 | | + | - | 1 | - | | - - | - | 1 | | - 1: | 17 | ~ | | - | - 1 | .3 | 6 | 2 1 | 8 | 3 | 4 | - | - | | - - | - | - | | - - | · - | - | - | - | - | - | 11 |
| | 66-1, 118-122 | | 1 | - | - | - | | - - | - | 1 | - | - 3 | 24 | - | - | - | - | + | + | - | 5 3 | 30 2 | 23 | | - | | - - | - | - | | - - | · - | + | + | - | - | - | 16 |
| | 66-1, 121-123 | | + | 1 | - | - | | · - | - | 1 | - | - 3 | 34 | - | | - | - | + | - | - 1 | 0 1 | .8] | 12 | - | - | | - - | - | - | | - - | | - | 1 | + | - | - | 13 |
| Crucidenticula | 66-2, 25-27 | | - | - | - | - | | - 1 | | 2 | - | - 4 | 42 | 4 | - | - | - | - | - | - 1 | 9 | 3 | 3 | - | - | | - - | | | | - - | | - | 4 | - | - | - | 25 |
| nicobarica | 66-2, 34-36 | | 1 | - | + | - | | • - | - | 2 | - | - ! | 58 | + | - | - | ~ | + | - | - | 8 | + | - | - | | | - - | - | - | | - - | | - | + | - | - | - | 30 |
| mcoburicu | 66-2, 82-84 | | 3 | - | - | - | | - - | + | 3 | - | - 1 | 30 | - | - | - | - | - | 1 | 1 | 9 | - | - | - | - | | | - | - | | - - | | + | 11 | + | - | - | 10 |
| ~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~ | 67-1, 27-32 | | + | - | - | - | | + | - | 69 | - : | 15 | + | - | - | - | - | - | - [| - | - | - | - | - | | | | - | - | | - - | _ | + | + | + | - | - | 3 |
| | 67-1, 112-113 | | + | - | + | + | | - - | - | 81 | - 1 | 10 | + | - | - | - | - | - | - 1 | | - | - | | - | - | | - - | - | - | | - - | | - | + | - | - | - | 1 |
| | 68-1, 30-34 | | - | - | + | | | · - | + | 78 | - : | 10 | 1 | - | - | | - | - | - | | - | - | - | - | - | -, - | - - | - | - | | - - | + | + | | - | - | - | 2 |
| | 68-1, 101-103 | | 1 | | - | - | | - - | 2 | 60 | - : | 24 | + | - | - | - | - | - | | | - | - | - | - | - | | - - | - | - | | - - | | - | ~ | - | - | - | 6 |
| | 68-4, 68-72 | | + | | 1 | 1 | | · - | + | 73 | - 3 | 11 | + | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | | - - | - | - | ~ . | - + | + | + | + | - | - | | 5 |
| | 68-6, 105-108 | | 1 | - | 1 | 1 | | - 1 | + | 37 | + 1 | 16 | + | - | - | ~ | | - | | | - | - | - | - | - | | · - | - | - | | - + | - + | + | + | - | - | | 4 |
| | 68-7, 24-26 | | 1 | - | - | + | | · 19 | 5 | 43 | - 3 | 12 | - | - | ~ | | - 1 | - | - | ~ · | - | - | - | - | - | | - | - | - | | - - | - | + | - | - | - | - | 5 |
| | 69CC | | 1 | - | + | 1 | - 3 | . 17 | 20 | 16 | + | 8 | 1 | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | | - | | - - | - | - | | - + | + | - | + | - | - | | 8 |
| Denticulopsis | 70-1, 16-20 | | 1 | - | + | - | - 4 | 12 | 20 | 3 | - 3 | 16 | - | - | - | ~ | - | - | - | | - | - | - | | | | - - | - | - | | - + | - | - | 1 | - | - | - | 27 |
| | 70-1, 38-81 | | 2 | - | 1 | - | - 1 | . 8 | 21 | 9 | 2 1 | 19 | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | | - | - | - | - | ~ | | - - | - | - | | - [- | - | - | - | - | | - | 10 |
| пуаттпа | 70-3, 49-53 | | 1 | - | 1 | 1 | - 7 | 1 3 | 30 | 11 | + : | 15 | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | | - | - | - | - | - | | · - | - | ~ | | - - | - | - | + | - | - | - | 22 |
| | 70-5, 23-27 | | 5 | - | 7 | - | - 1 | . 12 | 13 | 9 | - : | 18 | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | ~ · | - | - | - | - | - | | · - | - | - | | - - | - | - | 1 | - | - | | 6 |
| | 70-7, 5-7 | | 1 | | Т | - | - 3 | 3 9 | 12 | 8 | - 3 | 19 | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | | - | ~ | - | - | - | | · - | - | - | | - - | - | - | 3 | - | - | | 23 |
| | 71-1, 12-16 | | + | ~ | 4 | - | - 13 | 3 22 | 2 | 10 | - 1 | 15 | - | - | - | - | - | | | - | - | - | - | - | - | | · - | - | - | | - - | - | - | + | - | - | | 6 |
| | 71-3, 7-11 | | + | - | 1 | - | - 6 | 28 | 8 | 18 | - | 5 | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | | ~ | ~ | - | - | - | | · - | - | | | - - | - | + | + | - | - | - | 8 |
| | 71-3, 114-116 | | 1 | - | 4 | - | - 9 | 6 | 4 | 16 | - : | 13 | - | - | - | - | - | - | -1 | - : | - | - | - | - | - | | • | - | - | | - - | - | - | - | - | ~~ | - | 4 |
| | 71-5, 8-12 | | + | - | 7 | - | - 6 | $\frac{7}{2}$ | T | 18 | - | 6 | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | | - | - | - | - | - | | - - | ~ | - | | - + | - | 2 | - | - | - | - | 26 |
| | 72-1, 14-18 | | 5 | - | 9 | . – | | 17 | 4 | 4 | - | 5 | - | - | - | - | - | | - | | - | - | - | - | - | | · - | - | - | | - - | - | 8 | - | - | - | - | 14 |
| | 72-3, 15-17 | - | 4 | _ | | - | - 14 | 1 9 | - 4 | + | - | 3 | - | - | - | - | | | - | | - | | - | - | - | | • • | - | - | | - + | 1 | 12 | + | - | | - | 21 |
| | 72-5, 120-122 | | + | - | 2 | - | - 4 | | 3 | - | - | T | - | - | ~ | - | - | - | -1 | | - | ~~ | | - | - | | · - | - | - | | - - | - | 2 | - | - | - | - | 12 |
| | 72 2 27 21 | | + 2 | - | 2 | - | - 10 | | т | | _ | I | _ | _ | | - | - | - | - | | - | - | - | ~ | - | | - - | | - | | - - | + | + | - | - | - | - | 30 |
| | 73-5, 27-31 | | 5 | _ | 23 | _ | - 12 | | _ | _ | _ | 1 | _ | - | 2 | _ | _ | _ | 1 | _ | _ | _ | _ | _ | - | | - | - | - | | - + | + | 2 | _ | - | - | - | 32 20 |
| | 73-5 46-48 | | _ | _ | 17 | _ | - 10 | í - | _ | _ | _ | _ | _ | _ | _ | _ | _ | _ | 21 | | | _ | | _ | 2 | | 1 - | _ | _ | | - - | - | 2 | Ŧ | - | | _ | 25 |
| | 74-1 2 | | 1 | _ | 20 | + | ~ 13 | íl _ | - | | ~ | _ | _ | _ | _ | _ | _ | | _ | | | _ | _ | - | _ | | 1.2 | _ | _ | | | - 1 | 5 | _ | | - | _ | 13 |
| | 75-1, 70-72 | | 1 | - | 5 | ÷. | - 1 | <u>ا</u> _ | - | | _ | _ | _ | _ | - | _ | _ | - | _ | | _ | _ | - | - | _ | | | _ | _ | | | - | 2 | _ | _ | _ | _ | 13 |
| Denticulopsis | 76-1, 32-34 | | _ | _ | 4 | 1 | - 2 | _ | ~ | - | | _ | - | _ | _ | _ | _ | | | | _ | _ | - | | | ~ - | | _ | _ | | | + | - - | _ | _ | _ | - | 8 |
| lauta | 77-1, 81-83 | | 1 | _ | 4 | _ | - 5 | ; _ | | _ | ~ | _ | _ | _ | _ | - | _ | ~ | _ | | _ | _ | - | - | _ | | | | | | | _ | 2 | _ | _ | _ | _ | 10 |
| | 78-1, 54-56 | | 1 | 1 | 18 | _ | - 2 | - | _ | | _ | _ | _ | - | | _ | _ | _ | _ | | _ | | _ | _ | _ | | | _ | - | | . _ | + | ĩ | _ | _ | _ | _ | 5 |
| | 78-3, 92-94 | | + | _ | 2 | 2 | 2 3 | - 1 | - | - | - | _ | - | _ | _ | _ | - | _ | _ | | _ | _ | _ | _ | _ | | | | _ | | . _ | + | _ | _ | _ | | | 17 |
| | 79-1, 51-54 | | 1 | + | 10 | 7 | + + | | - | - | | _ | _ | - | _ | _ | - | - | _ | | _ | _ | _ | _ | - | | | _ | _ | | . _ | i | + | _ | _ | _ | _ ` | 8 |
| | 79-3, 55-57 | | + | _ | 2 | i | - 3 | 1 - | - | _ | - | _ | _ | - | _ | - | - | - | _ | | _ | _ | _ | - | _ | | - - | _ | _ | | | _ | _ | _ | _ | _ | _ | 8 |
| | 80-1, 20-21 | | 1 | 4 | 3 | 10 | - 4 | - | _ | _ | _ | _ | _ | _ | - | _ | _ | _ | _ | | _ | _ | _ | _ | _ | | - | _ | _ | | . _ | _ | 1 | _ | _ | _ | _ | 37 |
| | 82-1, 73-75 | | + | 7 | 24 | _ | - + | | _ | _ | - | _ | - | _ | _ | _ | _ | _ | _ | | _ | _ | _ | _ | _ | | | - | _ | | | _ | _ | _ | _ | _ | - | 27 |
| | 82-2, 73-75 | | - 1 | 18 | 2 | _ | - + | 1 - | _ | - | _ | _ | - | _ | - | _ | - | _ | - | | _ | _ | | _ | _ | | - 1 | - | _ | | | _ | _ | _ | _ | _ | | 14 |
| | 84-3, 63-65 | | - | 2 | - | - | | - 1 | - | _ | - | - | - | - | ~ | _ | - | | - | | - | - | - | - | - | | - 1 | _ | _ | | 1 - | | _ | - | _ | _ | | 46 |
| Denticulopsis | 85-1, 48-50 | | ÷ | 3 | _ | - | | - - | - | - | | - | - | _ | | _ | _ | | _ | | - | _ | _ | _ | _ | | - | | _ | | . _ | _ | _ | - | _ | _ | | 46 |
| praelauta | 85-4, 25-27 | | + | 3 | _ | | | - 1 | - | - | - | _ | - | - | - | - | _ | | - | | - | - | | - | _ | | - | ~ | _ | | . _ | ~ | _ | _ | _ | _ | - : | 26 |
| | | 1 | | | | | | 1 | | | | | | | | | | - | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |

Diatom genera Crucidenticula, Denticulopsis and Neodenticula (Y. Yanagisawa and F. Akiba)

Table 5Occurrences of taxa of the genera Den-
ticulopsis, Crucidenticula, their related
species and several zonal marker
species in DSDP Hole 438B. Note : See
Table 4 for explanation of numbers and
symbols.

| Diatom zone | Core-Secti Interval (Hole 438E | a o (1, 1, 1, 1, 1, 1, 1, 1, 1, 1, 1, 1, 1, 1 | Denticulopsis praelauta | Crucidenticula ikebei | C. kanayae var. kanayae | Kisseleviella carina | Actinocyclus ingens f. planus | A. ingens f. ingens | Resting spore |
|----------------|---------------------------------------|--|-------------------------|-----------------------|-------------------------|----------------------|-------------------------------|---------------------|---------------|
| | 6-1, 16- | 19 5 | 18 | - | | 4 | 6 | 5 | 94 |
| Denticulopsis | 7-1, 128- | 130 + | 22 | - | - | 8 | 12 | 7 | 81 |
| praelauta | 8-1, 90- | 92 1 | 27 | - | - | 9 | 3 | 6 | 113 |
| - | 9-1, 85- | 87 - | 2 | 1 | - | 1 | 23 | 38 | 36 |
| | 10-1, 9- | 10 - | - | 1 | 5 | 2 | 6 | 1 | 69 |
| | 11-1, 60- | 62 - | - | + | - | 4 | 28 | 1 | 54 |
| Crucidenticula | 12-1, 81- | 82 - | - | - | + | 11 | 3 | 1 | 24 |
| kanauae | 13-1, 68- | 70 - | - | - | 5 | + | 9 | 1 | 35 |
| Managac | 14CC | - | - | + | 18 | 3 | 9 | 1 | 80 |
| | 15-2, 61- | 62 - | ~ | 2 | 5 | - | 13 | 2 | 60 |
| | 16-1, 82- | 84 - | - | 3 | 8 | 2 | 10 | + | 56 |

Atlantic sectors.

On the basis of many biostratigraphic studies listed in Table 8, the geographic distributions of all taxa studied in this paper are presented in Table 7.

VI. Phylogenetic developments

Temporal and spatial distributions of the genera *Crucidenticula*, *Denticulopsis* and *Neo-denticula* are shown in Figure 11. Phylogenetic relationship in generic level is presented in Figure 12.

As discussed in AKIBA and YANAGISAWA (1986), the genera *Crucidenticula, Denticulopsis* and *Neodenticula* have no phylogenetic relationship to each other, although they are morphologically very similar to each other and were grouped in a single genus by SIMON-SEN (1979). The three genera evolved individually from the genus *Nitzschia* in different

times (Fig. 12). The genus *Crucidenticula* evolved from the genus *Nitzschia* in the late Early Miocene and disappeared near the end of the Middle Miocene. The genus *Denticulopsis* was born in the latest Early Miocene and became extinct in the early Late Miocene. The genus *Neodenticula* gradually developed from the genus *Nitzschia* in the latest Miocene, following the extinction of the genus *Denticulopsis* and is extant in the high-latitude of the Northern Hemisphere. Thus, close morphologic similarity within the three genera can be explained by evolutionary convergence.

Phylogenetic relationships in specific level are determined based on both morphologic similarity and time-and-space distribution (Fig. 13). In the following, phylogenetic developments of the genera *Crucidenticula*, *Denticulopsis* and *Neodenticula* are briefly described. Evolutionary changes in morphology are illustrated in Figures 14-17.

Genus Crucidenticula

Crucidenticula is originally a low-latitude genus. It appeared in the low-latitude area in the late Early Miocene and later expanded to the high-latitudes (Fig. 11).

The origin of Crucidenticula can be traced to an Early Miocene diatom Nitzschia maleinterpretaria which possesses almost the same valve structure to that of Crucidenticula, except that it lacks pseudosepta. However, the ancestry of this species remains unknown at present. From N. maleinterpretaria evolved Crucidenticula sawamurae, the first species of Crucidenticula, by a gradual development of pseudosepta in the late Early Miocene. By the successive evolutionary changes including enlargement of valve structure, C. sawamurae gave rise to C. ikebei and C. kanayae. Moreover, C. kanayae split into two geographical varieties, var. pacifica and var. kanayae. This evolutionary lineage was geographically confined within the low-latitude at the early stage of evolution, but at its later stage it expanded its distribution to the high-latitudes, giving rise to the middle- to high-latitude

Table 6Occurrences of taxa of the genera Crucidenticula, Denticulopsis, their related species
and several zonal marker species in DSDP Holes 77B and 71. Denticulopsis simon-
senii group includes D. simonsenii, D. vulgaris and D. praekatayamae. Note : See
Table 4 for explanation of numbers and symbols.

| | | | | | | | | | - | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
|-------------------------------------|--|--|--|---|--------------------------|-------------|---|--------------------------|------------------------|------------|----------------------------------|-------------------------|-------------------------------|---|---|--|------------------|----------------------|------------------|-------------|------------------|--------------------|
| Diatom Zone and Subzone | Core-Section, Interval (cm) | Crucidenticula punctata C. nicobarica | C. paranicobarica var. tropica C. kanayae var. pacifica | C. sawamurae Nitzschia maleinterpretaria | Denticulopsis simonsenii | D. vulgaris | D. praekatayamae rivala view of D simonsenii group | Denticulopsis lauta | D. barronii (Vc valve) | (Vo valve) | (Closed copula) (Open copula) | Actinocyclus moronensis | Annellus californicus | Cestodiscus peplum | Coscinodiscus lewisianus | Craspedodiscus coscinodiscus | C. elegans | Thalassiosira bukryi | T. brunii | T. grunowii | T. yabei | Triceratium pileus |
| Coscinodiscus yabei A | Hole 77B 17-1, 18-20 17-6, 23-25 | | | | + | + - | | 1 - | - | - | | | - | | - | - | - | - | 3 | - + | - | - |
| Actinocyclus moronensis | 18-2, 23-25 18-6, 38-40 19-2, 38-40 19-6, 38-40 | + | | | - + 16 1 | 6 5 - | + : | 1 - 5 - 2 - + - | | | | + 1 + 3 | | | | | | - | + + - 4 | + 2 - | + - + + | - |
| Craspedodiscus coscinodiscus | 20-2, 38-40 20-4, 30-31 20-6, 38-40 | 1 - 1 - 1 - | | | 2 5 18 | | | + - + - | - - 3 | - 3 9 | 97 2 | 2 - + | - | - | | + 2 + | - | - | + + - | + | 1 - - | - |
| Coscinodiscus gigas var. diorama | 21-2, 38-40 21-6, 35-37 22-2, 35-37 | - 1 1 - + 6 | | | 1 13 | - | | + - | - | - | | - 1 1 | - | - | - | + 5 | | - | 1 | 1 + + | + | - |
| Coscinodiscus lewisianus | 22-6, 35-37 23-2, 35-37 23-6, 35-37 24-6, 20-22 | - 45 - 21 - 13 | | | ++ | - | | + - | - | | | 1 | | | 1 + 1 | 2 + + | - | - | - | - | - | - |
| Cestodiscus peplum A | Hole 71 19-2, 108-110 19-4, 90-92 19-6, 86-88 20-2, 88-90 21-2, 89-91 21-4, 60-62 21-6, 91-93 22-2, 88-90 22-4, 29-31 22-6, 116-118 23-22 117-119 | | 17 - 6 - 2 12 8 7 - 26 - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - | - 13 - 5 - 4 - 4 | | | | | | | | + 1 1 1 1 1 1 | + + + + + + + + + + - + + + + | 1 - - 3 + + + + 1 2 - | 1 - 6 + 2 6 3 5 1 | 1 + 3 - + - + - + - + + | | | | | | |
| B Denticulopsis nicobarica A | 23-4, 77-79 24-2, 78-80 24-6, 45-47 25-1, 128-130 25-3, 96-98. 25-5, 92-94 26-2, 70-72 | | - + - 7 | - 1 + + 42 + 44 2 74 + 41 + 2 1 | | | | | | | | 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 | + | | + 2 3 + 1 10 | 1 | | - 1 + 1 | | | | |
| Triceratium pileus | 26-4, 70-72 26-6, 70-72 27-1, 100-102 28-2, 70-72 | | | - 60 - 10 - 1 |) -) - | - | - | | - | - | | - | - | - | 2 11 + 5 | - | - - ~ + | + 7 1 4 | - | - | - | 2 3 - 2 |
| Craspedodiscus elegans | 28-4, 70-72 28-6, 70-72 29-2, 70-72 | | | - 3 | 3 - | - | - | | | - | | - | | - | 2 + 3 | - | + - + | 1 - + | - | - | - | - |

taxa such as *C. ikebei* and *C. kanayae* var. *kanayae*. This geographic expansion coincides with a global climate optimum at the latest Early Miocene (Fig. 11). After the expansion, this lineage became extinct near the end of the Early Miocene. This extinction is probably due to the beginning of cooling at this time.

After then, the second lineage started from *C. paranicobarica* var. *tropica* which arose from *C. sawamurae* by size reduction. This low-latitude variety gave rise to a middle- to

| | | | | | | | | | — | | - | 1 | | | | - 1 | | _ | | | — т | -1 | - T | | _ | ar I | | | - 1 | | - T | |
|--------|---------------|--|-----|-----------------------|-------------------------|----------|--------------|---------------------------|----------------|------------|--------------|---------------|-------------|------------------|--------------|--------------|-----------|--------------------------|---------------------------------|----------------------------|-------------------------|-------------------------|--------------------------|-----------------------|-----------|------------------------------------|---------------|-------------|--------------------|---------------------------|-------------|------------|
| Ag | ge . | North Pacific diatom zones (Akiba, 1986) | NPD | Nitzschia challengeri | Denticulopsis praelauta | D. Iauta | D. ichikawae | D. Okunol D. tanimurae | D. praehyalina | D. hyalina | D. miocenica | D. simonsenii | D. vulgaris | D. praekatayamae | D. katayamae | D. hustedtii | D. crassa | D. praedimorpha v. minor | D. praedimorpha v. praedimorpha | D. praedimorpha v. robusta | D. dimorpha v. dimorpha | D. dimorpha v. areolata | Crucidenticula sawamurae | C. kanayae v. kanayae | C. ikebei | C. paranicobarica v. paranicobaric | C. nicobarica | C. punctata | Nitzschia rolandii | Neodenticula kamtschatica | N. koizumii | N. seminae |
| 111.04 | ÷. | N. seminae | 12 | | | | | - | | | | | | | | | _ | | | | _ | _ | | | | | | | | | | |
| | 1.8 | R. curvirostris | 11 | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | _ | | | | | | | | | | |
| [| Ē | A. oculatus | 10 | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | _ | | | | , | - | |
| ł | 1 | N. koizumii | 9 | | | | | | | | | 1 | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | <u>'</u> |
| | ഉ | N. koizumii- | 8 | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| ł | 9 | N. kamtschatica | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | - |
| - 5 - | Plioo | N. kamtschatica | 7B | | | | | | | : | | | • | | | | | | • | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| L | l o | | | | | : | : | | | | | 1 | | | | | | • | | | • | | | | | | | | | Ų | | _ |
| | ocen | R. californica | 7A | | | | | | | | | | : | : | | | | | | ; | : | | | • | | | | | | | | |
| | S | T. schraderi | 6B | | : | | ÷ | | • | | : | | | ÷ | ÷ | | | | | ÷ | : | : | | | | | ÷ | | | | | |
| ŀ | 0 | D. katayamae | 6A | 1 | | | | | | 0 | | 1 | i | 1 | | | | 1 | | | | | | | | | | | 1 | | | |
| | Lat | D. dimorpha | 5D | | | | | | | Ť | | T | 1 | 4 | Y | | 1 | | | | 1 | Q | | | | | | | 0 0 8 | | | |
| - 10 - | 0) | T. yabei | 5C | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | - 84 | | | | | | | | | | | _ | | |
| - | Miocene | D. praedimorpha | 5B | 0 0 0 0 | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| ſ | <u>e</u> | C. nicobarica | 5A | | | 0 | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | _ | | | i | | | | |
| ţ | 1 g | D. hyalina | 4B | | | 8 | 0 0 0 | | | Y | i | • | | | | | | | | | | | | i | 0 | 4 | ļ | | | _ | | |
| - 15 | _N | D. lauta | 4A | | A | | 6 | 0 | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | 0 | 0 | ľ | • | | | | | |
| t i | | D. praelauta | 3B | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | l e | C. kanayae | 3A | | | | | + | | | | 1_ | | | | | | - | | | | | | | | | | | | _ | | _ |
| | arly Mioce | T. fraga | 2 | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | _ | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 1 | ıш | T. spinosa | 11 | 1 | | | | | | | | 1 | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |

Bulletin of the Geological Survey of Japan, Vol. 41, No. 5

é

Fig. 8 Stratigraphic ranges of taxa of the genera *Denticulopsis*, *Crucidenticula*, *Neodenticula* and their related species in the middle- to high-latitude North Pacific. Width of solid line is roughly in proportion to abundance in occurrence of each taxon. Broken lines indicate sporadic occurrence. Narrow dotted lines show reworking observed in DSDP Hole 438A.



Fig. 9 Stratigraphic ranges of taxa of the genera *Denticulopsis*, *Crucidenticula* and their related species in the low-latitude Pacific. Ages of some middle Miocene diatom zones are modified after BARRON *et al.*, (1985). Width of solid line is roughly in proportion to abundance in occurrence of each taxon. Broken lines indicate sporadic occurrence.

| Ag | œ | Southern Ocea diatom zones (Weaver and | n | Denticulopsis praelauta | D. lauta s. l. | D. hyalina s. l. | D. simonsenii s. l. | D. delicata | D. ovata | D. ovata | D. praedimorpha | D. dimorpha + D. praedimorpha | N. maleinterpretaria | C. nicobarica s. l. | ii C. punctata s. l. |
|--------|----------|--|---------------------------------|-------------------------|----------------|------------------|-----------------------|-----------------|-------------------------|---------------------|-----------------|-------------------------------|----------------------|----------------------|--------------------------|
| Ma | | Gombos, 1981; Barron, 1985b) | NSD | D. aff. kamtschatica | D. lauta | D. hyalina | D. hustedtii | D. aff. seminae | D. hustedtii var. ovata | D. lauta var. ovata | D. praedimorpha | D. dimorpha | N. maleinterpretaria | Denticula nicobarica | D. punctata + v. hustedt |
| | Pleist. | C. lentiginosus C. elliptopora- A. ingens | 16 15 | | | | | | h | | | | | | |
| | Pliocene | R. barbor-N. kerg. C. kolbei-R. barb. C. insignis N. interfrigidaria N. angulata N. reinholdii | 14 13 12 11 10 9 | | | | 1 | | | | | | | | |
| | ocene | D. hustedtii | 8 | | | | 1 1 1 0 0 | | | | | | | | |
| _ 10_ | Late Mi | D. lauta- D. hustedtii | 7 | 9 | | | | | - | | | | | | _ |
| | Miocene | N. denticuloides | 6 | 1 | | | | | | | | ļ | | 1 | 1 |
| | Aiddle | N. grossepunctata | 5 | | | 1 | I | | | | | | , | - | 0 |
| - 15 - | | C. lewisianus | 4 | | | | | | | | | • | T | | |
| | Miocene | N. maleinterpretaria | 3 | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | Early | C. rhombicus B. veniaminii | 2 | | | | | | | | | | | | |

Bulletin of the Geological Survey of Japan, Vol. 41, No. 5

Fig. 10 Stratigraphic ranges of taxa of the genera *Denticulopsis*, *Crucidenticula* and their related species in the Southern Ocean. The figure is compiled from diatom stratigraphic records at DSDP Site 278 (SCHRADER, 1976), Site 266 (WEAVER and GOMBOS, 1981) and Sites 512 and 513 (CIESIELSKI, 1983). Lower specific names are original names used in these references, and upper ones are specific names used in this paper. Width of solid line is roughly in proportion to abundance in occurrence of each taxon. Broken lines indicate sporadic occurrence or reworking.

| "Denticula" norvegica "Denticulopsis" maccollumii | N. seminae | N. Rotzumt | Neodenticula kamtschatica | INITZSCHIA rolandu | | D. ovata | D. dimorpha var. dimorpha D. dimorpha var. arcolata | D. oarrons | D. praeaimorpha var. intermedia | D. praeaimorpha var. robusta | D. prueutmorphu val. prueutmorphu | D tradimorpha var. minor | | D. maseum | D. hustadtii | D dollarata | D katavamae | D. praekatavamae | D. vulgaris | D simonsonii | D. miocenica | D hyding | D. praehvalina | D. tanimurae | D. okunoi | D. ichikawae | D lanta | Nitzschia challengeri Denticulopsis praelanta | C. punctata | C. nicobarica | C. paranicobarica var. paranicobarica | C. paranicobarica var. tropica | C. kanayae var. kanayae | C. kanayae var. pacifica | C. ikebei | Nitzschia maleinterpretaria Crucidenticula sawamurae | | Species and varieties | | - | |
|--|------------|------------|---------------------------|--------------------|---|----------|--|------------|---------------------------------|------------------------------|-----------------------------------|--------------------------|-------|-----------|--------------|-------------|-------------|------------------|-------------|--------------|--------------|----------|----------------|--------------|-----------|--------------|---------|--|-------------|---------------|---------------------------------------|--------------------------------|-------------------------|--------------------------|-----------|---|----|-----------------------|-----------------|------------|---|
| 1 + | 0 | C | C |) + | - | 1 (| 00 | 1 | ١ | С |) (|) C | |) (| | (|) (|) (|) (| 5 | + (|) (|) C | 0 | 0 | С |) (|) + | + | + | 0 | + (| 0 | 1 (| С. | + + | M | Aiddle- to high-la | titude Northern | Hemisphere | |
| + | 1 | I | I | I | | I, | | C |) | I | I | | | l i | | | - | + (|) С | | I | | I | 1 | I | - | F | | + | 0 | | 0 | (| 0 | (| ЭC | | .ow-latitude are | ea | | |
| 0 | | | | 1 | (| | | | + | | + | + + | - - | + - | - + | - | - | + - | + (| 2 | (|) | | | | + (|) - | + | + | + | | | | | | + C | S | outhern Ocean | | | |
| + | 0 |) C | C |) + | - | 1 (| 00 | 1 | I | С | $) \subset$ |) (| |) (| | C |) (|) (|) (|) · | + (|) (| С | 0 | 0 | С |) |) + | + | + | 0 | + (| С | 1 (| С - | + 1 | N | lorthwest Pacif | ic | | |
| 1 | 0 | C | C |) + | - | (| 00 | | | | | | | | | (| C | | C | | (|) | | | | | | | | | | (| С | (| С | | H | ligh-latitude No | orth Pacific | | |
| 1.+ | 0 | C |) + | • + | • | | 0 | | | | С |) | + | ΗC |) | (|) | - | + (| | + (|) - | ł | | | C |) | + | + | + | | | | | | ł | N | Iortheast Pacifi | с | | |
| + | + | • + | • + | | | | | | | | + | - | | | | | | | - | F | - | F | | | | - | F | | + | + | | | | | | + | N | Iorwegian Sea | | | |
| + | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | H | F | | | | | | 4 | F | | + | + | | + - | + | | - | ł | A | tlantic coast of | f U. S. A. | | |
| | | | | | l | | | | | | | | | | | | | - | + + | F | | | | | - | + - | F | | + | + | | + | | | | + | N | lediterranean & | 2 Paratethys | | |
| + | 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 | | 1 | I | С |) | I | I | | 1 | | I | | - | + (|) (| 5 | | | 1 | | 1 | | - 1 | | + | 0 | | 0 | (| | (| 0 0 | E | astern equatori | al Pacific | | ' |
| | 1 | i | 1 | ١ | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | - | - | | | | | | | | | + | 0 | | | | | | | T | ropical Indian | Òcean | • | |
| 0 | 1 | | | | d |) C | 0 | T | + | | + | - + | | { | - + | - | - | + - | + (| 5 | | | | 1 | | + + | | | | | | | | | - | + 0 | Ir | ndian sector | | | 1 |
| 0 | | | | | | С | 0 | | | | | | | | | | | - | + (| | I C |) | | | | | H | - 1 | + | + | | | | | | 0 | P | acific sector | Southern O | cean | |
| 0 | 1 | ł | ţ | ł | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | C | | | | | | | | 4 | - | + | + | | | | | | | A | tlantic sector | | | ŀ |

Diatom genera Crucidenticula, Denticulopsis and Neodenticula (Y. Yanagisawa and F. Akiba)

- 217 -

Bulletin of the Geological Survey of Japan, Vol. 41, No. 5

| Table 8 References for Table / | Table 8 | References | for | Table | 7 |
|--------------------------------|---------|------------|-----|-------|---|
|--------------------------------|---------|------------|-----|-------|---|

| Middle- to high-latitude of the Northern Hemisp | here |
|---|---|
| Northwest Pacific | This paper ; Barron, 1980 ; Akiba <i>et al.</i> , 1982 ; Akiba, 1985, 1986 ; Maruyama, 1984a, b ; Oreshkina and Radionova, 1987 |
| High-latitude North Pacific | This paper ; Коїzимі, 1973 ; Огезнкіпа, 1985 ; Аківа, 1986 |
| Northeast Pacific | SIMONSEN and KANAYA, 1961; Schrader, 1973a, b, 1974b; Barron, 1975, 1976, 1981a; Barron and Keller, 1983 |
| Norwegian Sea | Schrader and Fenner, 1976; Dzinoridze, <i>et al.</i> , 1978; Baldauf, 1987; Monjanel, 1987 |
| Atlantic coast of U.S.A. | Andrews, 1978; Abbott, 1980, 1984; Abbott and Andrews, 1979; Abbott and Ernissee, 1983; Powers, 1988 |
| Mediterranean & Paratethys | Hajós, 1968, 1973, 1986 ; Monjanel, 1987 |
| Low-latitude area | |
| Eastern equatorial Pacific | This paper ; Goмвos, 1975 ; Barron, 1981b, 1983, 1985a |
| Tropical Indian Ocean | Schrader, 1974a |
| Southern Ocean | |
| Indian sector | This paper ; McCollum, 1975 ; WEAVER and GOMBOS, 1981 ; BARRON (personal comm.) |
| Pacific sector | Schrader, 1976 ; This paper ; Akıba, 1982 |
| Atlantic sector | Gombos, 1976 ; Fenner, 1978 ; Ciesielski, 1983 |

high-latitude variety *paranicobarica* by the reduction of puncta on valve face.

In the early Middle Miocene the third lineage started from *C. nicobarica* which itself developed from *C. paranicobarica* var. *tropica* by making clear quincunx arrangement of puncta on valve face. This evolutionary line went on evolving to *C. punctata* with enlargement of valve as a whole and terminated there without leaving any descendants in the late Middle Miocene. This extinction of *Crucidenticula*, which is basically a warm water genus, was probably due to progressive cooling during the Middle Miocene (Fig. 11).

Genus Denticulopsis

Although the genus *Denticulopsis* was born in the high-latitudes, it later expanded to the



Fig. 11 Temporal and spatial distributions of *Crucidenticula*, *Denticulopsis* and *Neodenticula* with composite benthic foraminiferal oxygen isotope records for Pacific and Atlantic DSDP sites (MILLER *et al.*, 1987).

- 219



Fig. 12 Evolution and stratigraphic distribution of the genera *Crucidenticula*, *Denticulop*sis and *Neodenticula*.

low-latitudes and became a cosmopolitan diatom genus (Fig. 11).

Near the beginning of the Middle Miocene, Denticulopsis praelauta, the oldest species of Denticulopsis, arose abruptly in the stratigraphic records of the middle- to high-latitude areas of both Northern and Southern Hemispheres. This sudden appearance of Denticulopsis just coincides with the initiation of Middle Miocene cooling following the latest Early Miocene climate optimum (Fig. 11). Although the ancestor of D. praelauta remains unknown at present, it is likely that the ancestry of this species may be a small Nitzschia species resembling N. challengeri, because of close morphologic affinities between the two species. D. praelauta evolved from the unknown ancestor by acquiring primary pseudosepta with basal ridges, and it started the first evolutionary lineage reaching to D. okunoi through D. lauta and D. ichikawae. This lineage evolved rapidly by the development of marginal rib (D. praelauta to D. lauta), the reduction of puncta on valve face (*D. lauta* to *D. ichikawae*) and a change in valve outline to oval form (*D. ichikawae* to *D. okunoi*), and then stopped there.

All species of this lineage are distributed mainly in the middle- to high-latitudes, except for a transient invasion of *D. lauta* into the low-latitude.

During the early Middle Miocene after the termination of the first *Denticulopsis* lineage at *D. okunoi*, three major evolutionary lineages radiated successively from *D. lauta* in various morphologic directions.

The first lineage led from D. tanimurae to D. miocenica through D. praehyalina and D. hyalina. This lineage originated from D. lauta through strong silicification associated with development of double-layered punctation on valve mantle. It shows tendencies to reduce the punctation on valve face (D. tanimurae to D. praehyalina to D. hyalina) and to change valve outline to oval form (D. hyalina to D. *miocenica*). The constituents of this lineage are all middle- to high-latitude species. Although this lineage terminated at D. miocenica, D. hyalina persisted up to the Late Miocene with very rare abundance. However, this persisted occurrence of D. hyalina is possibly due to reworking.

The second is a lineage that started from *D*. simonsenii, which itself evolved from D. lauta by creation of secondary pseudosepta. This lineage is composed of one principal lineage and two subordinate short lineages. The principal lineage led from D. simonsenii to D. katayamae via D. vulgaris and D. praekatayamae through successive reduction of puncta on valve face and gradual silicification associated with development of double-layered punctation on valve mantle. This lineage was born in the middle- to high-latitudes at ca. 14.5 Ma. After a brief incursion into the tropics just after 14.5 Ma, it was introduced into the low-latitude area from the middle- to high-latitudes at ca. 14 Ma, probably in response to severe polar cooling in the early Middle Miocene (Fig. 11; BARRON, 1986), and

Diatom genera Crucidenticula, Denticulopsis and Neodenticula (Y. Yanagisawa and F. Akiba)



Fig. 13 Evolutionary lineages of the genera Crucidenticula, Denticulopsis and Neodenticula.

-221-



- 222 —

Bulletin of the Geological Survey of Japan, Vol. 41, No. 5

Fig. 15 Evolutionary lineages of the for Denticulopsis praedimorpha, genus D. barronii, Denticulopsis. Only Vc D. dimorpha and type valves are D. ovata. illustrated



Diatom genera Crucidenticula, Denticulopsis and Neodenticula (Y. Yanagisawa and FAkiba)

- 223 -



16Evolutionary change in morphology of copula of the genus Denticulopsis

- 224 -

Bulletin of the Geological Survey of Japan, Vol. 41, No. CJ.



Fig. 17 Evolutionary lineage of the genus Neodenticula.

it became established as one of the most common diatom group in the Middle Miocene tropical diatom assemblage. Thus the lineage became a cosmopolitan diatom group distributed both in the high- to middle latitudes and the low-latitude, except for the last member *D. katayamae* which is restricted to the middle- to high-latitude.

A short lineage from *D. simonsenii* to *D. crassa* is characterized by a morphologic change to oval valve outline, thick silicification and development of closed copula. Another short lineage which led from *D. simonsenii* to *D. hustedtii* shows a phylogenetic trend of changing valve outline from linear to lanceolate form. Both lineages are geographically confined to the middle- to high-latitudes.

The third lineage which has its origin in D. lauta is a group of Denticulopsis praedimorpha. It appears to have arisen from the primitive form of D. lauta by creation of closed copula, although a stratigraphic gap exists between the ranges of the two species. D. praedimorpha var. minor, the first element of this lineage, appeared in the early Middle Miocene, and rapidly evolved into var. praedimorpha through an increase in size and the development of apical thickening of closed copula. The latter variety further developed into var. robusta by further enlargement of valve and the partial formation of cross rod in closed copula. On the other hand, D. barronii branched off from D. praedimorpha var. minor by making secondary pseudosepta in Vc type valve. Moreover, with gradual development of cross rods in closed copula, D. praedimorpha var. minor gave rise to D. praedimorpha var. *intermedia*, which is a link to the next D. dimorpha lineage. The D. praedimorpha lineage is originally and mainly a middle- to high -latitude group, although it includes a tropical species, D. barronii.

The next lineage started from *D. dimorpha* var. *dimorpha*. This lineage descended from *D. praedimorpha* var. *intermedia* by developing complete cross rods of closed copula. Stratigraphic and geographic data indicate that *D. dimorpha* lineage was first established in the Southern Ocean during the late Middle Miocene and later migrated to the middle- to high-latitude in the Northern Hemisphere. This evolutionary line consists of *D. dimorpha* var. *dimorpha*, *D. dimorpha* var. *areolata* and

Bulletin of the Geological Survey of Japan, Vol. 41, No. 5

D. ovata. The evolution from *D. dimorpha* var. *dimorpha* to var. *areolata* shows tendencies to increase in size and form double-layered punctation on both valve face and mantle. The last species *D. ovata* evolved from the primitive form of *D. dimorpha* var. *areolata* by development of unequally spaced cross rods of closed copula. All members of this lineage are middle- to high-latitude taxa. *D. dimorpha* is distributed in both the Northern and Southern Hemispheres, but *D. ovata* is endemic in the Southern Ocean.

By the end of the late Late Miocene *D. katayamae* Zone (NPD 6A), all *Denticulopsis* species including the last species *D. katayamae* became extinct. The extinction of the genus *Denticulopsis* coincides with the Late Miocene "ice growth event" (MILLER *et al.*, 1987).

No descendant species of this genus is present in overlying intervals. However, remarkable reworking of many *Denticulopsis* species is recognized in the latest Miocene to Early Pliocene sequences in the North Pacific and the Southern Ocean (Figs. 8,10; Table 4).

Genus Neodenticula

The evolutionary pattern of the genus *Neodenticula* is rather simple compared with those of *Crucidenticula* and *Denticulopsis*; It is represented by a single lineage from *Nitzschia* rolandii through *Neodenticula kamtschatica* and *N. koizumii* to *N. seminae*. These species are all endemic in the Northern Hemisphere (Fig. 11), especially dominant in the high-latitude North Pacific. This endemic and restricted distribution of *Neodenticula* is attributed to the strong provincialism of diatom assemblage which has developed remarkably since the beginning of the Pliocene.

Nitzschia rolandii, a precursor of the genus Neodenticula, first appeared in the late Middle Miocene, though it is sporadic during the Middle to early Late Miocene interval. After the Late Miocene extinction of the genus Denticulopsis, N. rolandii increased in abundance and occupied the ecological niche which the genus *Denticulopsis* occupied. After a while, this *Nitzschia* species graded into N. kamtschatica by the widening of interval between pseudosepta or transapical costae. Near the end of the Miocene (about 6 Ma), N. kamtschatica increased abruptly and became a most important constituent of the North Pacific Pliocene diatom assemblage. This species later gave rise to its descendant N. koizumii by creating secondary pseudosepta in the late Pliocene. Near the beginning of the Quaternary, the last species N. seminae evolved from N. koizumii by the development of closed copula, enlargement of valve and narrowing interval between the pseudosepta. N. seminae remains extant as the most important cold water diatom species in the highlatitude North Pacific (KANAYA and KOIZUMI, 1966).

VII. Taxonomic part

VII. 1 Genus Crucidenticula AKIBA et YANAGISAWA, with related species

Nitzschia maleinterpretaria SCHRADER

Plate 1, Figs. 1-4; Plate 8, Figs. 1-7

SCHRADER, 1976, p. 634, pl. 2, figs. 9, 11–19, 21, 24; BARRON, 1983, pl. 5, figs. 7, 8; BARRON, 1985a, pl. 9, fig. 8; BARRON 1985b, p. 787–788, fig. 13.13; non SCHRADER and FENNER, 1976, pl. 1, fig. 30.

Description: Frustule rectangular with rounded corners in girdle view (Pl. 1, Fig. 2). Valve linear or linear-elliptical with rounded apices, 8-57 μ m long, 3-6 μ m wide. Smaller valve linear with rounded apices (Pl. 1, Fig. 3), whereas larger valve linear-elliptical with slightly rostrate rounded apices (Pl. 8, Fig. 1). Transapical striae on valve face coarsely punctated, 11-16 in 10 μ m, puncta not in quincunx arrangement (Pl. 8, Fig. 3). Puncta rounded, 15-16 in 10 μ m. Valve mantle low, perforated by a row of puncta (Pl. 8, Fig. 5). Shallow transapical costae between each two transapical striae, 12–16 in 10 μ m, often branching at raphe-bearing margin (Pl. 8, Figs. 6, 7). Transapical costae straight and parallel to transapical axis in the middle of valve, becoming oblique to transapical axis and slightly curved toward apices. Raphe at the edge of valve face, divided into two branches at the middle (Pl. 8, Fig. 3). Portulae of raphe not spaced regularly, about one between two transapical striae on average. A central portula located where raphe is interrupted, larger than other portulae (Pl. 8, Fig. 3). Copula open and punctated by a row of puncta (Pl. 1, Fig. 2).

Stratigraphic occurrence: This species has a long stratigraphic range from the upper part of the *Craspedodiscus elegans* Zone (NTD 2) to the lower part of the *Cestodiscus peplum* Zone (NTD 5) in the equatorial Pacific. It occurs dominantly within the *Triceratium pileus* Zone (NTD 3). In the Southern Ocean, it occurs from the middle part of the *Coscinodiscus rhombicus* Zone (NSD 2) through the *N. maleinterpretaria* Zone (NSD 3). Its last occurrence defines the top of the latter zone (SCHRADER, 1976; WEAVER and GOMBOS, 1981; BARRON, 1985b).

Geographic distribution: The species is distributed in the equatorial Pacific and the Southern Ocean. It is also reported from the Norwegian Sea (SCHRADER and FENNER, 1976) but the illustrated specimen (pl. 1, fig. 30) is not assigned evidently to this species. It has not been reported from the middle- to highlatitude of the North Pacific.

Remarks: The species closely resembles *Crucidenticula sawamurae* in punctation on valve face and valve outline. However, it is easily distinguished from the latter species by the absence of pseudosepta.

Phylogenetic relationship: The species certainly exhibits strong affinities in valve outline and structure with *Crucidenticula sawamurae*. It evidently evolved into *C. sawamurae* by development of pseudosepta. The antecedent of this species can not be traceable at present.

Crucidenticula sawamurae n. sp. Plate 1, Figs. 5-9

Synonymy: Denticula punctata SCHRADER, DZINORIDZE et al., 1978, pl. 20, figs. 3, 4; Denticulopsis nicobarica (GRUNOW) SIMONSEN, BARRON, 1981b, pl. 2, fig. 8; BARRON, 1985b, pl. 9, fig. 7; Denticulopsis aff. kanayae (AKIBA) BARRON, POWERS, 1988, pl. 5, figs. 4, 5; Denticulopsis kanayae (AKIBA) BARRON, POWERS, 1988, pl. 5, fig. 6.

Description: Frustule rectangular with rounded corners in girdle view, about $6-7 \,\mu m$ in depth. Valve linear or slightly linear-elliptical with rounded apices, $14-51 \,\mu m \log$, 3.5- $5.5 \,\mu \text{m}$ wide. Transapical striae on valve face coarsely punctated, 13-16 in 10 μ m, puncta not arranged in quincunx and sometimes sporadic. Transapical striae straight and parallel to transapical axis in the middle, becoming curved and oblique to transapical axis toward apices. Puncta rounded, 11-12 in $10 \,\mu$ m. Valve mantle perforated by two rows of puncta, 13-16 puncta in 10 µm. Primary pseudosepta, 3-5 in $10 \,\mu m$, sometimes oblique to transapical axis and not always equally spaced. Unclear secondary pseudosepta rarely present. Marginal ribs short and numerous, 13-16 in 10 μ m between each two transapical striae. Raphe marginal. Copula open, perforated by a row of puncta, 13-14 in $10 \ \mu m$.

Holotype: Plate 1, Fig. 9; GSJ F12752 deposited in Geological Survey of Japan (Sample DSDP Hole 71, 25-3, 96-98 cm, eastern equatorial Pacific).

Paratype: Plate 1, Fig. 8; GSJ F12751 (Sample DSDP Hole 71, 25-1, 128-130 cm, eastern equatorial Pacific)

Stratigraphic occurrences : The first occurrence of this species marks the base of the A Subzone of the *Denticulopsis nicobarica* Zone (NTD 4) in the equatorial Pacific. Its last occurrence falls within the lower part of the B Subzone of the *D. nicobarica* Zone.

Geographic distribution: *C. sawamurae* occurs dominantly in the equatorial Pacific. It is also found with very rare abundance from

the Early Miocene Kamenoo Formation in Joban Coalfield of Japan (AKIBA, 1985). This species is distributed in the Southern Ocean (BARRON, personal communication, 1988). This geographic distribution indicates that *C. sawamurae* is basically a low-latitude species.

Remarks: This new species is distinguished from *Crucidenticula nicobarica* and *C. punctata* by non-quincunx arrangement of puncta. It differs from *C. paranicobarica* by more robust and wider valve, and from *C. ikebei* by its linear valve outline. The species is easily distinguished from *C. kanayae* by finer punctation. It resembles *Nitzschia maleinterpretaria* in valve outline, the same density of transapical striae, slightly oblique transapical striae and punctated copula, but differs by the presence of pseudosepta.

Phylogenetic relationship: The species is the oldest representative of the genus Cruci*denticula* and may be a basic ancestor of all species included in this genus. It appears that the species evolved from Nitzschia maleinterpretaria because of morphologic similarities between the two species. This phylogenetic relationship is also supported by the presence of evolutionary intermediate form between the two species (Pl. 1, Fig. 4), which show close affinity with N. maleinterpretaria but has inconspicuous pseudosepta. C. sawamurae evolved from N. maleinterpretaria through gradual development of pseudosepta from transapical costae. It gave rise to C. ikebei and C. kanayae var. pacifica.

Derivation of name: The species is named in honor of Dr. Konosuke SAWAMURA, one of the pioneers of diatom biostratigraphic study of Japan.

Crucidenticula ikebei AKIBA et YANAGISAWA Plate 1, Figs. 10-12; Plate 8, Figs. 8-13

AKIBA and YANAGISAWA, 1986, p. 485–486, pl. 1, figs. 1, 2; YANAGISAWA *et al.*, 1989, pl. 6, fig. 28.

Synonymy : Denticula ikebei AKIBA, 1977, pl. 1, figs. 15a-15c, pl. 2, figs. 1a-3, nom. invalid ; Denticula ikebei AKIBA ex BARRON, 1980, p. 672, pl. 1, fig. 30, nom. invalid.

Description: Frustule rectangular with rounded corners, sometimes curved in girdle view (Pl. 1, Fig. 12). Valve linear-elliptical, broad in the middle and tapered to apices with elongated rounded apices, $18-67 \,\mu m \log$, 4-7 μ m wide. Transapical striae of rounded puncta on valve face coarsely punctated, 12-16 in 10 μ m, arranged not in clear quincunx, so that oblique rows obscure. Valve mantle low, perforated by two longitudinal rows of puncta (Pl. 8, Fig. 11). Primary pseudosepta, 3-5 in 10 μ m, not equally spaced, with narrow basal ridges (Pl. 8, Fig. 12). Secondary pseudosepta absent. Marginal ribs short and inconspicuous on both sides between transapical striae. Raphe located at valve margin, interrupted at the middle point and divided into two branches of raphe (Pl. 8, Fig. 9). Portulae of raphe rounded and small except for a large central one which is located where raphe is interrupted (Pl. 8, Fig. 13). Portulae irregularly spaced, about one in two transapical striae on average. Copula open with punctated sides (Pl. 1, Fig. 12).

Stratigraphic occurrence: The species occurs rarely within the *C. kanayae* Zone (NPD 3A) in the middle- to high-latitude North Pacific. It is sometimes found with very sporadic occurrence in the overlying *Denticulopsis lauta* Zone (NPD 4A) and the *D. hyalina* Zone (NPD 4B).

Geographic distribution : *C. ikebei* is known only from the middle- to high-latitude North Pacific at present. It is not distributed in the equatorial Pacific. This species has not been reported from the Southern Ocean.

Remarks: The species is very similar to *Crucidenticula sawamurae* and *C. paranico-barica*, but distinguished by the slender linear -elliptical valve outline with elongated apices. It also resembles *Denticula norwegica* SCHRADER (Pl. 1, Fig. 40) in valve outline, but differs fundamentally in shape and structure

of puncta; *C. ikebei* has round puncta occluded by cross-shaped rotae, whereas *D. norwegica* possesses oval puncta occluded by mesh-like cribra (Pl. 8, Fig. 18).

Phylogenetic relationship: *C. ikebei* is considered to be a descendant of *C. sawamurae* because of morphologic similarities between the two species. It evolved from *C. sawamurae* by the change in valve outline from linear to linear lanceolate form. It left no descendant.

Crucidenticula kanayae var. pacifica n. var. Plate 1, Figs. 36-38

Synonym: *Denticulopsis* sp. cf. *D. kanayae* (AKIBA) BARRON, 1985a, pl. 9, fig. 4.

Description: Frustule rectangular with rounded corners. Valve heavily silicified, mostly linear with bluntly rounded apices, 20- $48 \,\mu m$ long, $5.5-7 \,\mu m$ wide. Transapical striae very coarsely punctated, 10-11 in 10 μm ; puncta not arranged in clear quincunx. Puncta rounded about 6-7 in 10 μ m, occluded by cross-shaped rotae. Valve mantle high, perforated with two longitudinal rows of rounded puncta. Primary pseudosepta about 3 in 10 μ m, mostly in transapical direction, but sometimes slightly oblique to transapical axis near apices. Secondary pseudosepta absent. Marginal ribs very inconspicuous between each two transapical striae on both sides, 10-11 in $10 \,\mu$ m. Raphe marginal. Copula open and punctated with a row of longitudinal row of puncta.

Holotype: Plate 1, Fig. 38; GSJ F12744 deposited in Geological Survey of Japan (Sample DSDP Hole 71, 22-6, 116-118 cm, eastern equatorial Pacific).

Paratype: Plate 1, Fig. 37; GSJ F12745 (Sample DSDP Hole 71, 23-2, 117-119, eastern equatorial Pacific).

Stratigraphic occurrence: The variety has a short range from the base of the B Subzone of the *Denticulopsis nicobarica* Zone (NTD 4B) to the lowest part of the *Cestodiscus peplum* Zone (NTD 5) in the equatorial Pacific.

Geographic distribution: The variety is found in the equatorial Pacific but not in the middle- to high-latitude North Pacific.

Remarks: This new variety and *C. kanayae* var. *kanayae* are different mainly in type of copula; the var. *pacifica* has open punctated copulae (Type Cop; Pl. 1, Fig. 38) without any exceptions, whereas the var. *kanayae* has open non-punctated copulae (Type Con; Pl. 8, Fig. 14). This new variety differs from the nominative variety also by slightly denser punctation on valve face and more linear valve outline. *C. kanayae* var. *pacifica* differs from *C. sawamurae* by coarser punctation and from *C. punctata* by both coarser punctation and non-quincunx arrangement of puncta.

Phylogenetic relationship: The stratigraphic range and morphologic similarities suggest that this taxon evolved from *Crucidenticula sawamurae* by enlargement of valve structure. *C. kanayae* var. *pacifica* is probably a geographic variety of *C. kanayae* var. *kanayae* and may be an ancestor of the latter variety.

Crucidenticula kanayae AKIBA et YANAGISAWA var. kanayae Plate 1, Figs. 33-35, 39; Plate 8, Figs. 14-17

AKIBA and YANAGISAWA, 1986, p. 486, pl. 1, figs. 3-8, pl. 3, figs. 1-6, 9-11.

Synonymy: Denticula nicobarica GRUNOW, HATA and HASEGAWA, 1970, pl. 4, figs. 3a-6b, Denticula punctata SCHRADER, SCHRADER and FENNER, 1976, pl. 1, figs. 42, 43, non pl. 1, fig. 33; Denticula kanayae AKIBA, 1977, pl. 1, figs. 1a-10b, pl. 2, fig. 13, nom. invalid.; Denticula kanayae AKIBA ex BARRON, 1980, p. 672, pl. 1, figs. 26-28, nom. invalid.; Denticulopsis kanayae (AKIBA) BARRON, 1985b, p. 784, figs. 13.20, 13.21, nom. invalid.

Description: Frustule rectangular with rounded corners, about $9 \,\mu$ m in depth. Valve heavily silicified, mostly linear-oblong, less frequently linear-elliptical with bluntly

rounded apices, 14-43 µm long, 4-8 µm wide. Transapical striae very coarsely punctated, 9-10 in 10 μ m; puncta not always arranged in clear quincunx and sometimes sporadic so that hyaline areas sometimes present on valve face. Puncta rounded about 6 in $10 \,\mu m$, occluded by cross-shaped rotae. Valve mantle high, perforated with two longitudinal rows of rounded puncta. Primary pseudosepta 2 in 10 μ m, mostly in transapical direction, but sometimes slightly oblique to transapical axis. Secondary pseudosepta absent, but some specimens has shallow incomplete rudimentary pseudosepta. Marginal ribs very inconspicuous between each two transapical striae, 9-10 in 10 μ m. Raphe marginal. Copula open and not punctated.

Stratigraphic occurrence: This variety is very abundant in the *C. kanayae*. Zone (NPD 3 A) and rare or sporadic in younger horizons up to the *Denticulopsis hyalina*. Zone (NPD 4B) in the middle- to high-latitude North Pacific.

Geographic distribution : *C. kanayae* var. *kanayae* occurs in the middle- to high-latitude North Pacific. It is also reported from the Norwegian Sea (SCHRADER and FENNER, 1976). In the equatorial Pacific, it is not found but another variety *C. kanayae* var. *pacifica* is distributed. There has been no information on this taxon in the Southern Ocean.

Remarks: The copula of this variety is an open non-punctated type (Con; Pl. 8, Figs. 14, 15). This is an unique and specialized characteristic among the genus *Crucidenticula* because all other *Crucidenticula* taxa have open punctated copulae (type Cop). The taxon differs from the variety *pacifica* by this open non -punctated copula. The variety resembles *Crucidenticula sawamurae*, but differs by coarser punctation. It is also similar to *Crucidenticula punctata* but differs by both coarser punctation and non-quincunx arrangement of puncta.

Phylogenetic relationship: This variety is probably a geographic variety of *C. kanayae* var. *pacifica*; *C. kanayae* var. *pacifica* and var. *kanayae* are distributed mainly in the lowlatitude and the high-latitude, respectively. The var. *kanayae* may be a descendant of the var. *pacifica*, because the former appeared slightly later than the latter variety. *C. kanayae* var. *kanayae* left no descendant.

Crucidenticula paranicobarica var. tropica n. var. Plate 1, Figs. 17-22

Synonymy: Denticula nicobarica GRUNOW, ABBOTT and ERNISSEE, 1983, pl. 13, fig. 7; Denticulopsis nicobarica (GRUNOW) SIMONSEN, BARRON, 1983, pl. 5, fig. 2; TANIMURA and SAITO, 1986, pl. 2, fig. 15; Denticulopsis nicobarica var. 1, MARUYAMA, 1984a, pl. 16, fig. 12

Description: Frustule rectangular with rounded corners. Valve narrowly linear with bluntly rounded apices, $5-58 \,\mu\text{m}$ long, 2-3.5 μm wide. Transapical striae coarsely punctated 16-18 in 10 μ m, without reduction of puncta. Primary pseudosepta 5-6 in 10 μ m, not always equally spaced. Secondary pseudosepta basically absent but rarely unclear shallow secondary pseudosepta present. Marginal ribs short and numerous, 16-18 in 10 μ m. Raphe marginal. Copula open and punctated with a longitudinal row of puncta.

Holotype: Plate 1, Fig. 19; GSJ F12739 deposited in Geological Survey of Japan (Sample DSDP Hole 71, 21-2, 89-91 cm, eastern equatorial Pacific)

Paratype: Plate 1, Fig. 17; GSJ F12740 (Sample DSDP Hole 71, 21-4, 60-62 cm, eastern equatorial Pacific)

Stratigraphic occurrence: The variety has its first occurrence in the middle part of the A Subzone of the *Cestodiscus peplum* Zone (NTD 5A) and its last occurrence near the base of the overlying B Subzone of the *C. peplum* Zone (NTD 5B) in the equatorial Pacific.

Geographic distribution: The variety occurs predominantly in the equatorial Pacific. It is sometimes found from several on-land sequences in Japan which were affected by warm water current during the early Middle Miocene (Pl. 1, Fig. 21). It also reported from the Atlantic coast of U.S.A. (ABBOTT and ERNISSEE, 1983). These occurrences suggest that this variety is mainly a low-latitude warm water taxon.

Remarks: The variety is characterized by full punctation on valve face, non-quincunx arrangement of puncta and slender valve outline. It is distinguished from its nominative variety by the full punctation on valve face. However, specimens with slightly reduced punctation are rarely encountered in DSDP Hole 71. In this study these specimens are tentatively included in the var. *tropica*. The variety has been confused with *Crucidenticula nicobarica*, but clearly differs by non-quincunx arrangement of puncta. It is also similar to *Crucidenticula sawamurae*, but distinguished by more slender valve outline.

Phylogenetic relationship: The stratigraphic range of this variety is separated from those of preceding *Crucidenticula kanayae* var. *pacifica* and *C. sawamurae* by a short interval where no *Crucidenticula* species occurs. However, morphologic similarities suggest that *C. paranicobarica* var. *tropica* is most probably a descendant of *C. sawamurae*. This variety is a geographic variety of the nominate variety and may be an ancestor of the latter variety because the var. *tropica* occurs slightly earlier than the var. *paranicobarica. C. paranicobarica* vith development of clear quincunx arrangement of puncta on valve face.

Crucidenticula paranicobarica AKIBA et YANAGISAWA var. paranicobarica Plate 1, Figs. 13-16

AKIBA and YANAGISAWA, 1986, p. 487, pl. 2, figs. 8-14; AKIBA, 1986, pl. 26, fig. 7.

Synonymy: Denticula nicobarica GRUNOW, SCHRADER, 1973a, pl. 1, figs. 31-34; Denticula paranicobarica AKIBA, 1977, pl. 1, figs. 11a-14b, pl. 2, figs. 7a-9b, nom. invalid; Denticulopsis paranicobarica AKIBA, TANIMURA and SAITO, 1986, pl. 2, fig. 14.

Description: Frustule rectangular with

rounded corners in girdle view, $5-8 \,\mu\text{m}$ in depth. Valve narrowly linear or rarely linearelliptical with bluntly rounded apices, $8-32 \,\mu\text{m}$ long, $2.5-4.5 \,\mu\text{m}$ wide. Puncta on valve face usually sporadic except for two apical rows near both valve margins and several sporadic puncta in or around central chamber, 14-16 in $10 \,\mu\text{m}$. Primary pseudosepta 4-6 in $10 \,\mu\text{m}$, sometimes slightly oblique to transapical axis and not always equally spaced. Secondary pseudosepta rarely present (Pl. 1, Figs. 15, 16). Marginal ribs short and numerous, 14-16 in 10 μm . Raphe marginal. Copula open and punctated with a longitudinal row of puncta.

Stratigraphic occurrence: In the middleto high-latitude North Pacific, the variety has its first occurrence in the lowest part of the *Denticulopsis lauta* Zone (NPD 4A) and occurs frequently in the middle to upper part of this zone and the lower part of the overlying *Denticulopsis hyalina* Zone (NPD 4B). Its last occurrence, although it is obscure due to sporadic occurrence, is near the top of the *D. hyalina* Zone.

Geographic distribution: The variety is distributed in the middle- to high-latitude North Pacific, but not in the equatorial Pacific. It is not known in the Southern Ocean. Based on these occurrences, this variety seems to be a middle- to high-latitude taxon.

Remarks: *C. paranicobarica* var. *paranicobarica* is characterized by its slender valve outline and non-quincunx arrangement of puncta and reduced sporadic punctation. It is distinguished from *C. paranicobarica* var. *tropica* by the reduced punctation. The variety has been confused with *C. nicobarica* because of similar valve shape, but differs clearly by non-quincunx arrangement of puncta and reduced punctation.

Phylogenetic relationship: *C. paranicobarica* var. *paranicobarica* is mainly distributed in the middle- to high-latitudes, whereas the var. *tropica* occurs in the low-latitude. The two varieties have nearly the same stratigraphic ranges, although the var. *tropica*

appeared slightly earlier than the var. *paranicobarica*. These geographic and stratigraphic evidences suggest that the var. *paranicobarica* is a geographic variation of the var. *tropica* and evolved from the latter variety by reducing of puncta on valve face.

Crucidenticula nicobarica (GRUNOW) AKIBA et YANAGISAWA Plate 1, Figs. 23-29

AKIBA and YANAGISAWA, 1986, p. 486-487, pl. 1, fig. 9, pl. 2, figs. 1-7, pl. 5, figs. 1-9; AKIBA, 1986, pl. 26, figs. 1-4; YANAGISAWA *et al.*, 1989, pl. 6, fig. 24.

Synonymy: Denticula nicobarica GRUNOW, 1868, p. 97, pl. 1A, figs. 5a, 5b; VAN HEURCK, 1880-1885, pl. 49, fig. 3; SIMONSEN and KANAYA, 1961, p. 503, pl. 1, figs. 11-13; SCHRADER, 1973a, pl. 1, fig. 35; SCHRADER, 1973b, p. 419-420, pl. 1, figs. 25-27; SCHRADER, 1974b, figs. 1:26, 1:27; GOMBOS, 1976, pl. 8, fig. 8; SCHRADER and FENNER, 1976, pl. 1, fig. 32; AKIBA, 1977, pl. 2, figs. 5, 6, 12; ABBOTT, 1980, pl. 1, fig. 18; BARRON, 1980, pl. 1, figs. 22, 23; Denticulopsis nicobarica (GRUNOW) SIMON-SEN, 1979, p. 65; BARRON, 1981a, pl. 4, fig. 6; AKIBA et al., 1982, pl. 3, figs. 49-52; MARU-YAMA, 1984a, pl. 15, figs. 12-13b, pl. 16, fig. 11; BARRON, 1985 b, p. 785, fig. 13.19.

Description: Frustule rectangular with rounded corners in girdle view. Valve narrowly linear to linear-elliptical with bluntly rounded apices, $10-32 \,\mu$ m long, $3.5-4.5 \,\mu$ m wide. Transapical striae on valve face coarsely punctated, about 16 in $10 \,\mu$ m; puncta in quincunx so that clear oblique rows formed. Puncta rounded, occluded by cross-shaped rotae. Valve mantle perforated by two longitudinal rows of puncta. Primary pseudosepta 4-5 in $10 \,\mu$ m. Secondary pseudosepta absent. Marginal ribs short and numerous, about 16 in $10 \,\mu$ m between transapical striae. Raphe marginal. Copula open and punctated by a row of puncta, 13-14 in $10 \,\mu$ m.

Stratigraphic occurrence: In the middleto high-latitude North Pacific, the first occurrence of this species is in the uppermost part of the Middle Miocene *Denticulopsis lauta* Zone (NPD 4A) and its last occurrence lies in the lower part of the *Denticulopsis praedimorpha* Zone (NPD 5B). However, its abundance is generally rare except within the *C. nicobarica* Zone (NPD 5A) where this species occurs frequently.

In the equatorial Pacific, *C. nicobarica* first occurs in the uppermost part of the A Subzone of the *Cestodiscus peplum* Zone (NTD 5A) and last occurs in the middle part of the *Coscinodiscus gigas* var. *diorama* Zone (NTD 7), occuring very abundantly from the B Subzone of the *C. peplum* Zone through the *Coscinodiscus lewisianus* Zone (NTD 6).

In the Southern Ocean, this species occurs from the middle part of the *Coscinodiscus lewisianus* Zone (NSD 4) to the lower part of the *Nitzschia denticuloides* Zone (NSD 6).

Geographic distribution: This species is a cosmopolitan species with very broad distribution over the world. However, it is most dominant in the equatorial Pacific where it often occupies more than a half of diatom assemblages (Table 6; BARRON, 1985a).

Remark : The diagnostic characteristics of this species are its clear quincunx arrangement of puncta and small size. It is distinguished from *Crucidenticula sawamurae*, *C. ikebei* and *C. paranicobarica* by the clear quincunx pattern of puncta. It resembles *C. punctata*, but differs by smaller size.

Phylogenetic relationship: The most probable ancestor of *C. nicobarica* is *C. paranicobarica* var. *tropica* because of their stratigraphic occurrences and morphologic similarities. The species probably developed from the latter taxon through rearrangement of puncta from non-quincunx to clear quincunx. The descendant form of this species is *C. punctata*.

Crucidenticula punctata (SCHRADER) AKIBA et YANAGISAWA Plate 1, Figs. 30-32

AKIBA and YANAGISAWA, 1986, p. 487, pl. 1,
figs. 10-12, pl. 4. figs. 1-9.

Synonymy: Denticula nicobarica GRUNOW, KANAYA, 1971, pl. 40.5, figs. 12a, 12b; Denticula punctata SCHRADER, 1973a, p. 705, pl. 1, figs. 25-30; SCHRADER, 1973b, p. 420, pl. 1, fig. 19; SCHRADER, 1974b, figs. 1: 22-1: 24; Denticulopsis punctata (SCHRADER) SIMONSEN, 1979, p. 65; MARUYAMA, 1984a, pl. 16, fig. 6; Denticula punctata f. hustedtii SCHRADER, 1973a, p. 705, pl. 1, figs. 23, 24; Denticulopsis punctata f. hustedtii (SCHRADER) SIMONSEN, 1979, p. 65; BARRON, 1981a, pl. 4, fig. 1; BAR-RON, 1985a, pl. 9, fig. 11; BARRON, 1985b, p. 785, fig. 13.18; KOIZUMI and TANIMURA, 1985, pl. 1, figs. 9, 10; Denticula punctata var. hustedtii SCHRADER, 1973b, p. 420, pl. 1, fig. 18; non BARRON, 1980, pl. 1, fig . 29; Denticulopsis nicobarica (GRUNOW) SIMONSEN, POWERS, 1988, pl. 5, fig. 7.

Description: Frustule rectangular with rounded corners in girdle view. Valve linear to linear-elliptical with bluntly rounded apices, $20-40 \,\mu\text{m}$ long, $5.5-7.5 \,\mu\text{m}$ wide. Transapical striae on valve face coarsely punctated, 14-15 in $10 \,\mu m$; puncta in clear quincunx so that clear oblique rows formed. Puncta rounded, occluded by cross-shaped rotae. Valve mantle high, perforated by four longitudinal rows of puncta. Primary pseudosepta 3-4 in 10 μ m. Secondary pseudosepta 0 -2 between each two primary pseudosepta. Marginal ribs short and numerous, 15-16 in 10 μ m. Raphe marginal. Copula open and punctated by a row of puncta. Pleurae open, first and third ones narrow and second one broad.

Stratigraphic occurrence: In the middleto high-latitude North Pacific, this species occurs rarely from the uppermost part of the *Denticulopsis hyalina* Zone (NPD 4B) to the top of the *Denticulopsis praedimorpha* Zone (NPD 5B). In the equatorial Pacific, it is found within the interval from the upper part of the *Coscinodiscus lewisianus* Zone (NTD 6) to the upper part of the *Craspedodiscus coscinodiscus* Zone (NTD 8). In the Southern Ocean, the species has its reported stratigraphic range from the uppermost part of the *Nitzschia maleinterpretaria* Zone (NSD 3) to the lower part of the *Nitzschia denticuloides* Zone (NSD 6).

Geographic distribution : *C. punctata* is a cosmopolitan species. It occurs in the middle- to high-latitude of the North Pacific, Norwegian Sea, the equatorial Pacific and the Southern Ocean.

Remarks: This species is characterized by its clear quincunx arrangement of puncta on valve face and relatively large size. It resembles *Crucidenticula nicobarica*, but differs by larger size and more frequent development of secondary pseudosepta. It is also very similar to *C. kanayae* and *C. sawamurae* but distinguished from them by clear quincunx arrangement of puncta.

Phylogenetic relationship: The stratigraphic records and morphologic characteristics indicate that this species evolved from *C. nicobarica* by an increase in size and development of many secondary pseudosepta. *C. punctata* is the last member of the genus *Crucidenticula*. It became extinct without leaving any descendant species before the end of Middle Miocene.

VII. 2 Genus *Denticulopsis* SIMONSEN emend. AKIBA et YANAGISAWA with closely related species

Nitzschia challengeri SCHRADER

Plate 2, Figs. 1, 2, 10; Plate 9, Figs. 12-16; Plate 10, Figs. 1, 2

SCHRADER, 1973a, p. 707, pl. 5, figs. 10-14, . non pl. 5, fig. 34; BARRON, 1980, pl. 2, fig. 10; BARRON, 1981a, pl. 4, fig. 19; MARUYAMA, 1984b, pl. 11, fig. 18; YANAGISAWA *et al.*, 1989, pl. 6, fig. 32.

Description: Frustule rectangular with rounded corners in girdle view. Valve linear to linear-elliptical with bluntly rounded apices, $10-29 \,\mu\text{m}$ long, $3.5-5.5 \,\mu\text{m}$ wide. Transapical costae shallow and equally spaced, 9-12 in $10 \,\mu\text{m}$, straight in the middle and curved near apex. At each apex two or three longitudinal costae running to apex, which are very similar to apical costa of *Denticulopsis* (Pl. 9, Fig. 15). Intercostal area perforated with mostly two or rarely three transapical striae of fine puncta (Pl. 9, Fig. 16). Raphe marginal, divided at the middle into two branches of raphe. Portula between each two transapical costae (Pl. 9, Fig. 15). Copula open and punctated by a row of puncta.

Stratigraphic occurrence: This species occurs rarely but consistently from the latest Early Miocene through the Middle Miocene in the middle- to high-latitude North Pacific. Its first occurrence is in the lowest part of the *Denticulopsis praelauta* Zone (NPD 3B); namely just above the first occurrence of *D. praelauta*, and its last occurrence lies in the uppermost part of the *Denticulopsis praedimorpha* Zone (NPD 5B) or the lower part of the *Thalassiosira yabei* Zone (NPD 5C).

Geographic distribution: The species is found only in the middle- to high-latitude North Pacific.

Remarks: *N. challengeri* is sometimes similar to the primitive form of *D. praelauta* when the spacing of its transapical costae is relatively wide.

Phylogenetic relationship: It is certain that *N. challengeri* shared common ancestry to the genus *Denticulopsis* because of its common valve structures to *Denticulopsis* and its affinity with *D. praelauta*. This species is considered to be derived from an unknown common ancestor with *D. praelauta* in the latest Early Miocene.

Denticulopsis praelauta AKIBA et KOIZUMI Plate 2, Figs. 3-5, 16-18

AKIBA, 1986, p. 439, pl. 26, figs. 10–14; AKIBA and YANAGISAWA, 1986, p. 490, pl. 7, figs. 1–15, pl. 8, figs. 1–9; YANAGISAWA *et al.*, 1989, pl. 6, figs. 3, 4.

Synonymy: Denticula aff. kamtschatica ZABELINA, SCHRADER, 1976, p. 632, pl. 4, fig. 18; Denticula sp. cf. D. lauta BAILEY, BARRON, 1980, p. 672, pl. 1, figs. 13, 14; *Denticulopsis* sp. A, AKIBA *et al.*, 1982, pl. 3, figs. 41-44.

Description: Frustule rectangular with rounded corners in girdle view, $6-7 \mu m$ in depth. Valve small, narrowly linear with bluntly rounded apices, $8-16 \mu m$ long, $2.5-5.5 \mu m$ wide. Transapical striae on valve face finely punctated, 25-30 in $10 \mu m$; puncta in quincunx so that oblique rows formed. Primary pseudosepta 5-8 (mostly 5-6) in $10 \mu m$, with poorly developed narrow basal ridges. Secondary pseudosepta absent. Marginal ribs absent in primitive form but inconspicuous marginal ribs observed in advanced form. Raphe marginal. Copula open, punctated by longitudinal rows of puncta or non-punctated.

Stratigraphic occurrence : Common to abundant in the Early Miocene D. praelauta Zone (NPD 3B) in the middle- to high-latitude North Pacific. Its first occurrence defines the base of this zone and its last occurrence is in the lower part of the overlying *Denticulopsis* lauta Zone (NPD 4A). In the Southern Ocean, the species shows only sporadic occurrence from the uppermost part of the Nitzschia *maleinterpretaria* Zone (NSD 3) to the upper part of the Denticulopsis lauta-D. hustedtii Zone (NSD 7). This is probably because the interval where D. praelauta is expected to occur abundantly (around 16 Ma in age) is missing due to a hiatus at DSDP Site 278 (WEAVER and GOMBOS, 1981).

Geographic distribution: The species is found in the middle- to high-latitude North Pacific and the Southern Ocean but not in the low-latitude.

Remarks: *D. praelauta* resembles *D. lauta*, but differs from the latter by the absence or very poor development of marginal ribs. It is similar to *Nitzschia challengeri* when it has no clear basal ridges, but distinguished by wider intervals of pseudosepta or costae. The older primitive form which occurs in the lower part of the *D. praelauta* Zone is characterized by the absence of marginal ribs and poor development of basal ridges, whereas the younger advanced form found from the upper part of the *D. praelauta* Zone through the lower part of the *D. lauta* Zone has inconspicuous marginal ribs and moderately developed basal ridges. The latter younger form may be an evolutionary intermediate form to *D. lauta*. *D. praelauta* has two types of copula (Cop and Con) and therefore four types of frustules are formed (Pl. 2, Figs. 16-18).

Phylogenetic relationship: *D. praelauta*, the oldest known member of the genus *Denticulopsis*, is a basic ancestor of all species of this genus. However, a possible ancestor of this species is unknown at present. *Nitzschia challengeri*, which is very similar to *D. praelauta*, may share common ancestry as stated earlier. *D. praelauta* is a direct precursor of *Denticulopsis lauta*.

Denticulopsis lauta (BAILIY) SIMONSEN

Plate 2, Figs. 6-8, 15; Plate 5, Figs. 1-3; Plate 9, Fig. 1

SIMONSEN, 1979, p. 64; MARUYAMA, 1984a, pl. 14, figs. 1a-8b, pl. 16, figs. 9, 10; BARRON, 1985b, p. 785; AKIBA, 1986, pl. 26, fig. 15; AKIBA and YANAGISAWA, 1986, p. 489, pl. 7, fig. 29, pl. 9, figs. 2-9, non pl. 9, fig. 1. TANIMURA and SAITO, 1986, pl. 2, figs. 6, 7; YANAGISAWA, *et al.*, 1989, pl. 6, fig. 5; TANIMURA, 1989, pl. 1, figs. 16a-17b.

Synonymy: Denticula? lauta BAILEY, 1854, p. 9, figs. 1, 2; Denticula lauta BAILEY, SIMON-SEN and KANAYA, 1961, p. 500-501, in part, pl. 1, figs. 1, 3, non pl. 1, figs. 2, 6-10.

Description: Frustule rectangular with rounded corners in girdle views. Valve linear to linear-elliptical with bluntly rounded apices, 7-57 µm long, 3.5-8 µm wide. Transapical striae on valve face finely punctated, 20-28 in 10 μ m; puncta in quincunx so that oblique rows formed. Primary pseudosepta 3-5 in 10 μ m. Secondary pseudosepta absent. Apical pseudosepta present near apices in some specimens. Marginal ribs present between each two primary pseudosepta on both sides. Raphe marginal. Copula open and non-punctated but primitive forms with both punctated and non-punctated copulae.

Stratigraphic occurrence: In the middleto high-latitude North Pacific, the species occurs abundantly in the lower Middle Miocene *D. lauta* Zone (NPD 4A). The first occurrence of this species defines the base of the *D. lauta* Zone and its last consistent occurrence is in the lower part of the *Crucidenticula nicobarica* Zone (NPD 5A).

In the equatorial Pacific, this species is found sporadically in the lower part of the A Subzone of the Cestodiscus peplum Zone (NTD 5A).

In the Southern Ocean, the reported stratigraphic range of D. lauta is separated into two ranges by a gap in the early Middle Miocene (Fig. 10). Of these two ranges, the lower one from the uppermost part of the Nitzschia maleinterpretaria Zone (NSD 3) to the middle part of the N. grossepunctata Zone (NSD 5) is considered the true range of D. lauta, because it just corresponds to those in the middle- to high-latitude North Pacific and in the equatorial Pacific. However, the upper range from the lower part of the Nitzschia denticuloides Zone (NSD 6) to the top of the *D*. lauta-D. hustedtii Zone (NSD 7) may not be a range of D. lauta but that of Denticulopsis dimorpha s. 1. (D. dimorpha and D. praedimorpha). Since it is not so easy to distinguish the value of D. lauta from those of D. dimorpha and D. praedimorpha without careful observation as will be discussed in remarks, the valve of D. dimorpha and D. praedimorpha may have previously been mis identified as D. lauta.

Geographic distribution : Although it occurs in the low-latitude, *D. lauta* is basically a middle- to high-latitude species because of its abundant occurrences in the middle- to high-latitude North Pacific and the Southern Ocean.

Remarks: The species resembles *D. ichikawae*, but differs by full punctation on valve face. The more linear valve outline distinguishes *D. lauta* from *D. okunoi* which has more oval outline. *D. lauta* also has similar characteristics to those of *D. tanimurae* but differs by finer punctation and more weakly silicified valve.

There are sometimes large valves with a central raphe (Pl. 2, Fig. 38; Pl. 9, Figs. 10, 11). Although these forms were described as Yoshidaia divergens KOMURA (KOMURA, 1976, p. 389-390, Abb. 9, figs 1-3, pl. 40, figs. 6-8), they may possibly be initial values of D. lauta because of similar valve structures. The characteristics of these forms are as follows: (1) A raphe, which is located along valve edge in ordinary vegetative valves, is running along the valve center. (2) The valve face is strongly convex so that valve face and mantle can not be distinguished. (3) The valve is relatively larger than ordinary vegetative valves. (4) Other features are almost the same as those of corresponding vegetative valve. (5) The occurrence of these forms is always very rare. (6) The stratigraphic range of these forms roughly coincides with that of corresponding vegetative valves. Although it is highly possible that Yoshidaia divergens may be an initial valve of D. lauta, further study is needed to confirm this possibility.

D. lauta, D. praedimorpha and *D. dimorpha* are very similar in valve morphology and thus they have been confused and misidentified for a long time (SIMONSEN and KANAYA, 1961; KOIZUMI, 1973, 1975; BARRON, 1980, 1985b). However, valves of the three species can be clearly distinguished by shape of basal ridge (AKIBA, 1979; MARUYAMA, 1984a; AKIBA and YANAGISAWA, 1986; Pl. 5, Figs. 1, 4, 5, 13, 14).

D. lauta possesses distinct basal ridges looking like clear dark bow ties in silhouette in LM (Pl. 5, Fig. 1, right). In contrast the basal ridges of Vc type valve of *D. praedimorpha* are much shorter than those of *D. lauta*, looking like dark small quadrangles in silhouette (Pl. 5, Fig. 4, right), whereas those of Vo type valve are bow tie-shaped, but exhibit very unclear and faint impression because they are very low (Pl. 5, Fig. 5, right). The Vc-type valve of *D. dimorpha* lacks basal ridges (Pl. 5, Fig. 13), while those of Vo type valve have the same look as those of Vo type valve of *D. praedimorpha* (Pl. 5, Fig. 14).

D. lauta, D. praedimorpha and D. dimorpha are distinguished more easily in type of copula than in valve morphology. The copula of D. lauta is a weakly silicified open band with non -punctated sides (type Con) and short and indistinct pairs of inner extensions (Pl. 5, Fig. 2). In contrast D. praedimorpha has two types of closed copulae (types Ccr and Ccm) and one type of open copula (type Cop). The closed copula is strongly silicified with relatively long and sharply truncated pairs of inner extensions (Pl. 5, Fig. 8). The type Ccr copula has a serrate edge (Pl. 5, Fig. 6), whereas the type Ccm copula has a smooth edge (Pl. 5, Fig. 7). The open copula with punctated sides (Cop) is weakly silicified (Pl. 5, Fig. 9) with indistinct pairs of inner extensions. D. dimor*pha* also has two types of closed copula (types Ccr and Ccm) and one type of open copula (type Cop) as D. praedimorpha does. However, the closed copula of D. dimorpha possesses complete cross rods (Pl. 5, Fig. 15). The open copula of D. dimorpha is the same as that of D. praedimorpha (Pl. 5, Fig. 16).

Phylogenetic relationship: The species is a descendant of *D. praelauta* because of nearly continuous morphologic series from the younger advanced form of *D. praelauta* to *D. lauta*. *D. lauta* arose from *D. praelauta* by gradually development of marginal ribs. *D. lauta* gave rise to four species; *D. ichikawae*, *D. tanimurae*, *D. praedimorpha* and *D. simonsenii*.

Denticulopsis ichikawae n. sp. Plate 2, Figs. 9, 11-13; Plate 9, Figs. 2-4

Synonymy: Denticula lauta BAILEY, SIMON-SEN and KANAYA, 1961, pl. 1, fig. 2, non pl. 1, figs. 1, 3, 6-10; Denticulopsis lauta (BAILEY) SIMONSEN, HAJÓS, 1986, pl. 34, figs. 7-16; AKIBA and YANAGISAWA, 1986, pl. 9, fig. 1.

Description: Frustule rectangular with rounded corners in girdle view, $6-8 \ \mu m$ in

depth. Valve linear to linear-elliptical with rounded apices, $9-30 \ \mu m$ long, $4-6 \ \mu m$ wide. Transapical striae on valve face, finely punctated, 20-26 in $10 \ \mu m$, partly reduced so that the middle part of the interval between pseudosepta is hyaline. Valve mantle finely punctated without reduction of puncta. Primary pseudosepta, 3-5 in $10 \ \mu m$. Secondary pseudosepta absent. Apical pseudosepta present in some specimens. Between each two primary pseudosepta, short marginal ribs present on both sides. Raphe marginal. Copula open with smooth non-punctated sides.

Holotype: Plate 2, Fig. 12; GSJ F 12813 deposited in Geological Survey of Japan (Sample DSDP Hole 438 A, 79–1, 51–54 cm, northwest Pacific).

Stratigraphic occurrence: The species first occurs in the lower part of the *Denticulopsis lauta* Zone (NPD 4A) and is abundant in the middle part of this zone. It is rare to sporadic in the upper part of this zone and the overlying *Denticulopsis hyalina* Zone (NPD 4B), making its real last occurrence difficult to recognize.

Geographic distribution: The species is distributed in the middle- to high-latitude North Pacific and the Southern Ocean, but not in the equatorial Pacific.

Remarks: This new species resembles *D. lauta* and *D. okunoi*, but differs from the former by its reduced transapical striae or hyaline middle intervals between pseudosepta, and from the latter by its linear valve outline. It is also very similar to *D. praehyalina* in partly reduced transapical striae, but distinguished by more thinly silicified valve structures, finer punctation and pattern of reduction of puncta on valve face.

Phylogenetic relationship: Morphologic similarities and stratigraphic occurrence indicate that *D. ichikawae* evolved from *D. lauta* through partial reduction of puncta on valve face. *D. ichikawae* developed into *D. okunoi* by change in valve outline from linear to oval form.

Derivation of name: The species is named

in honor of Dr. Wataru ICHIKAWA, one of the pioneers of diatom biostratigraphic research in Japan.

Denticulopsis okunoi n. sp. Plate 2, Figs. 19-25

Synonymy: Denticulopsis lauta (BAILEY) SIMONSEN, AKIBA et al., 1982, pl. 3, figs. 46, 47; Denticulopsis lauta BAILEY, ITO, 1986, pl. 1, figs. 1, 2, 5; Denticulopsis praedimorpha AKIBA, LEE, 1986, pl. 2, fig. 18.

Description: Frustule rectangular with rounded corners in girdle view. Valve oval with broadly rounded apices, $10-21 \,\mu m$ long, $6-9.5 \,\mu m$ wide. Transapical striae on valve face finely punctated, 22-26 in $10 \,\mu m$, partly reduced so that the middle part of interval between each two pseudosepta is hyaline. Valve mantle low, finely punctated without reduction of puncta. Primary pseudosepta, 6-7 in $10 \,\mu m$, curved near apex. Short marginal ribs present between each two pseudosepta on both side. Secondary pseudosepta absent. Apical pseudosepta present in some specimens. Raphe marginal. Copula open with smooth non-punctated sides.

Holotype: Plate 2, Fig. 22; GSJ F12814 deposited in Geological Survey of Japan (Sample JOB 423, Taga Formation, Hirakata, Joban Coalfield, Ibaraki, Japan).

Stratigraphic occurrence: The species has a very short range in the lower part of the *Denticulopsis lauta* Zone (NPD 4A). Its first occurrence is younger than that of *Denticulopsis ichikawae*.

Geographic distribution: The species has been found only from Japan and its environs at present.

Remarks: Reduction of puncta on valve face varies from nearly full punctation (Pl. 2, Fig. 21) to reduction with only two striae near each two pseudosepta (Pl. 2, Fig. 19). This new species is characterized by its oval valve outline, which distinguishes it from its related species *D. ichikawae* and *D. lauta*. Biometric analysis indicates that this species is signifi-



Fig. 18 Plot of width and length in valves of Denticulopsis okunoi, D. ichikawae and D. lauta. Sample JOB 423, Taga Formation, Hirakata, Ibaraki, Joban Coalfield, Japan (Denticulopsis lauta Zone, NPD 4A).

cantly different from the latter two species in valve length and width (Fig. 18). It is similar to *D. crassa* in valve outline, but clearly distinguished by the absence of secondary pseudosepta. This species also resembles *D. ovata*, but differs in morphology of copula and stratigraphic range.

Phylogenetic relationship: *D. okunoi* is a descendant of *D. ichikawae* because of its stratigraphic range and morphologic similarities. It evolved from *D. ichikawae* through change in valve outline from linear form to oval one. *D. okunoi* is the last member of the lineage leading from *D. praelauta* via *D. lauta* and *D. ichikawae*.

Derivation of name: Named in honor of Dr. Haruo OKUNO who first examined fossil *Denticulopsis* species by transmitted electron

microscope.

Denticulopsis tanimurae n. sp. Plate 2, Figs. 26, 27

Synonymy: Denticula lauta var. valida (PEDICINO) OKUNO, 1964, p. 41, pl. 505, bottom, non, pl. 505, top; Denticulopsis praehyalina TANIMURA, 1989, in part, pl. 1, figs. 5a, 5b, pl. 2, figs. 4a, 4b, non pl. 1, figs. 1-4, 6-9b, pl. 2, figs. 1-3b, 5-7.

Description: Frustule rectangular with rounded corners in girdle view. Valve thickly silicified, linear to linear-elliptical with rounded apices, 10-60 μ m long, 4-7.5 μ m wide. Transapical striae on valve face relatively coarsely punctated, 20-24 in 10 μ m with network of ramified thickening. Valve mantle high with double-layered coarse punctation composed of outer fine and inner chamberlike large punctations. Primary pseudosepta 4-5 in 10 μ m. Secondary pseudosepta absent. Marginal ribs present on both side between each two pseudosepta. Raphe marginal. Copula open with smooth non-punctated sides.

Holotype: Plate 2, Fig. 27; GSJ F12819 deposited in Geological Survey of Japan (Sample DSDP Hole 438A, 71–3, 7–11 cm, northwest Pacific).

Stratigraphic occurrence: The species has its first occurrence in the uppermost horizon of the *Denticulopsis lauta* Zone (NPD 4A), slightly prior to the first occurrence of *D. praehyalina*. Its last occurrence is within the upper part of the *Denticulopsis hyalina* Zone (NPD 4B).

Geographic distribution: This species is recognized in the middle- to high-latitude North Pacific but not in the equatorial Pacific.

Remarks: This new species is characterized by the thickly silicified valve and coarser punctation on valve face. It is very similar to *D. lauta*, but distinguished by strongly silicified valve, slightly coarser punctation on valve face and double-layered punctation on valve mantle. The species also resembles *D*. *praehyalina*, but differs by the full punctation on valve face.

Phylogenetic relationship: *D. tanimurae* probably evolved from *D. lauta* by development of double-layered punctation on valve mantle associated with strong silicification. *D. tanimurae* evolved into *D. praehyalina* by reduction of puncta on valve face.

Derivation of name: This new species is dedicated to Dr. Yoshihiro TANIMURA, National Science Museum, Tokyo, Japan, who described *Denticulopsis praehyalina*, a descendant species of *D. tanimurae*.

Denticulopsis praehyalina TANIMURA emend.

Plate 2, Figs. 28-32; Plate 9, Figs. 5-7

TANIMURA, 1989, p. 172-174, pl. 1, figs. 1-4, 6-9b; pl. 2, figs. 1-3b, 5-7, non pl. 1, fig. 5, pl. 2, figs. 4a, 4b.

Synonymy: Denticula lauta BAILEY, SCHRA-DER, 1973a, pl. 2, figs. 21, 22; SCHRADER, 1973b, pl. 1, fig. 20; Denticula miocenica SCHRADER, 1973b, pl. 1, figs. 14, 15; Denticulopsis sp. 1, TANIMURA and SAITO, 1986, pl. 2, figs. 9-12; YANAGISAWA et al., 1989, pl. 6, fig. 8.

Emended description : Frustule rectangular with rounded corners in girdle view. Valve thickly silicified, linear to linear-elliptical with bluntly rounded apices, $10-40 \,\mu m \log$, $5-9\,\mu m$ wide. Transapical striae on valve face finely punctated 12-24 in 10 μ m, sporadic with variable reduction of puncta. In some specimens with strongly reduced punctation, only one or two striae of sporadic puncta present near primary pseudosepta. Puncta more or less arranged in quincunx. Clusters of puncta arranged in a longitudinal line along raphe-bearing margin, looking like triangular or hexagonal large pores in LM, two in each chamber. Two apically arranged rows of rounded large depressions present on valve face. Valve mantle high, perforated by double -layered punctation composed of outer finely perforated wall, 32-38 puncta in $10 \,\mu m$, and inner coarse punctation, 7-10 in $10 \ \mu m$. Primary pseudosepta 3-5 in $10 \ \mu m$. Secondary pseudosepta absent. Apical pseudosepta present in some specimens. Marginal ribs present between each two primary pseudosepta. Raphe marginal. Copula open with smooth non-punctated sides.

Stratigraphic occurrence: The first occurrence of this species is observed in the uppermost part of the *D. lauta* Zone (NPD 4A), slightly above the first occurrence of *D. tanimurae* and slightly below that of *D. hyalina*. Its last occurrence is in the uppermost part of the *D. hyalina* Zone (NPD 4B).

Geographic distribution: The species is distributed in the middle- to high-latitude North Pacific, but not in the equatorial Pacific. There is no information on this species in the Southern Ocean so far.

Remarks: The diagnostic features of this species are its thick silicification and partly reduced punctation on valve face. The species resembles D. tanimurae and D. hyalina in that they are all thickly silicified, but differs from D. tanimurae by reduced punctation and from D. hyalina by the presence of puncta on valve face. It is also similar to D. ichikawae in the partly reduction of puncta, but differs by more thickly silicified valve and the distribution pattern of reduced puncta on valve face. The primitive form of *D. praehyalina* with weakly reduced punctation (Pl. 2, Fig. 28) is rather similar to D. tanimurae, whereas the advanced form with sporadic puncta near each pseudoseptum (Pl. 2, Fig. 32) is very close to D. hyalina. This graded morphologic series in valve face punctation (Pl. 2, Figs. 26-33) suggests the evolutionary lineage from D. tanimurae through D. praehyalina to D. hyalina.

Phylogenetic relationship: The almost continuous morphologic grading mentioned above indicates that *D. praehyalina* evolved from *D. tanimurae* through reduction of puncta on valve face and developed into *D. hyalina* by further reducing of punctation.

Denticulopsis hyalina (SCHRADER) SIMONSEN

Plate 2, Figs. 14, 33, 34; Plate 9, Figs. 8, 9

SIMONSEN, 1979, p. 64; BARRON, 1981a, pl. 4, figs. 3, 4; MARUYAMA, 1984a, pl. 13, figs. 7–10, pl. 16, figs. 7, 8; BARRON, 1985b, p. 784, figs, 13. 26, 27; AKIBA, 1986, pl. 26, figs. 20–25; AKIBA and YANAGISAWA, 1986, p. 488–489, pl. 10, figs. 1–11, 14–16, pl. 11, figs. 1–10, pl. 12, figs. 1–5; TANIMURA and SAITO, 1986, pl. 2, figs. 1–4; YANAGISAWA *et al.*, 1989, pl. 6, figs. 9–11; TANIMURA, 1989, pl. 1, figs. 10–14.

Synonymy: Denticula lauta BAILEY, KO-IZUMI, 1968, pl. 34, figs. 11a-12b; Denticula hyalina SCHRADER, 1973a, p. 704, pl. 1, figs. 12 -22; SCHRADER, 1973b, p. 418, pl. 1, figs. 10, 22; SCHRADER, 1974b, fig. 1:25; KOIZUMI, 1975a, pl. 1, figs. 21-26; AKIBA, 1979, pl. 3, figs. 5, 6; BARRON, 1980, pl. 1, fig. 12; Denticula hyalina var. hustedtii SCHRADER, 1973b, pl. 1, figs. 9, 21.

Description: Frustule rectangular with rounded corners in girdle view. Valve thickly silicified, linear to linear-elliptical with bluntly rounded apices, $8-36 \,\mu m$ long, $3.5-7 \,\mu m$ wide. Valve almost hyaline. Clusters of fine puncta arranged in a longitudinal line along raphe-bearing margin, looking like large triangular or hexagonal pores in LM, two between each two primary pseudosepta. Valve mantle high, perforated by doublelayered punctation composed of outer finely perforated wall, 32-38 in $10 \,\mu$ m, and inner coarse puncta, 7-10 in $10 \,\mu m$. Primary pseudosepta 3-4 in 10 μ m. Secondary pseudosepta absent. Marginal ribs present between each two primary pseudosepta on both sides. Raphe marginal. Copula open with smooth non-punctated sides.

Stratigraphic occurrence: The first occurrence of this species defines the base of the *D. hyalina* Zone (NPD 4B) in the middle- to highlatitude North Pacific. This species occurs commonly to abundantly through this zone, showing remarkable high abundance in its uppermost part where it occupies 80-90% of

the assemblage. It abruptly decreases in abundance at the base of the *Crucidenticula nicobarica* Zone (NPD 5A) and thereafter it is rare or sporadic in overlying Middle to Late Miocene sequences until the top of the Upper Miocene *D. katayamae* Zone (NPD 6A) in the DSDP Hole 438 A. The species increases again at the base of the *Thalassionema schraderi* Zone (NPD 6B) and shows frequent occurrence through this zone and the overlying *Rouxia californica* Zone (NPD 7A). This occurrence is, however, probably due to reworking related to a hiatus at the base of the *T. schraderi* Zone. Its precise last appearance is, therefore, difficult to recognize.

In the Southern Ocean, this species is found in the uppermost part of the *Coscinodiscus lewisianus* Zone (NSD 4) through the *Nitzschia grossepunctata* Zone (NSD 5).

Geographic distribution: The species is restricted to the middle- to high-latitude in the Northern and Southern Hemispheres.

Remarks : *D. hyalina* is characterized by its almost hyaline valve face. It is distinguished from *D. praehyalina* by the lack of striae on valve face, and from *D. miocenica* by its more slender and linear valve outline. This species bears resemblance to *D. katayamae* in hyaline valve face but differs by the absence of secondary pseudosepta.

A very large valve with linear valve outline, a central raphe and coarse double-layered punctation on whole valve face (Pl. 2, Fig. 45) was described as *Katahiraia oblonga* KOMURA (KOMURA, 1976, p. 386-387, abb. 6, figs. 1-4, pl. 41, fig. 6) or *Katahiraia pauperata* KOMURA (KOMURA, 1976, p. 387-388, abb. 7, pl. 41, fig. 7). However, this form is possibly an initial valve of *D. hyalina* because of morphologic resemblance between them except for differences in valve size and location of raphe. This is also supported by the roughly coincident stratigraphic ranges of these *Katahiraia* species and *D. hyalina*. However, further study is required to confirm their critical relationship.

Phylogenetic relationship: *D. hyalina* is surely a descendant of *D. praehyalina* because

of morphologic continuity between the two species (TANIMURA, 1989). It evolved from *D. praehyalina* by further reduction of puncta, and developed into *D. miocenica* by change in valve outline from linear to oval form.

Denticulopsis miocenica (SCHRADER) SIMONSEN emend. Plate 2, Figs. 35-37

SIMONSEN, 1979, p. 65; AKIBA, 1986, pl. 26, figs. 26, 27; AKIBA and YANAGISAWA, 1986, p. 489, pl. 10, figs. 17-23, pl. 12, figs. 6-9.

Synonymy : Denticula miocenica SCHRADER, 1973a, p. 705, pl. 2, figs. 26–28 ; non SCHRADER, 1973b, pl. 1, figs. 14, 15 ; AKIBA, 1979, pl. 3, fig. 8 ; Denticulopsis hyalina (SCHRADER) SIMON-SEN, AKIBA and YANAGISAWA, 1986, pl. 10, figs. 12, 13.

Description: Frustule rectangular with rounded corners in girdle view. Valve thickly silicified, oval with broadly rounded apices, 7.5-38 μ m long, 5.5-13 μ m wide. Valve face almost hyaline. Clusters of fine puncta arranged in a line along raphe-bearing margin, looking like triangular or hexagonal large pores in LM, two between each two primary pseudosepta. Primary pseudosepta 3.5-5 in 10 μ m, curved near apex. Secondary pseudosepta absent. Marginal ribs present between each two primary pseudosepta. Raphe marginal. Deck very broad with small foramina. Copula open with smooth non-punctated sides.

Stratigraphic occurrence: The species is restricted in the uppermost part of the *Denticulopsis hyalina* Zone (NPD 4B) with generally very rare abundance. However it is found very abundantly from exotic blocks in the Chokubetsu Formation of the Kushiro Coalfield, eastern Hokkaido, Japan (Fig. 19; AKIBA and ICHINOSEKI, 1983).

Geographic distribution : This species have been found only from the middle- to highlatitude North Pacific.

Remarks: *D. miocenica* bears resemblance to *D. hyalina*, but differs by more oval valve outline. We have once questioned the tax-



Fig. 19 Plot of width and length in valves of Denticulopsis miocenica and D. hyalina. Sample JDS 5801, an exotic block in the Chokubetsu Formation, Kushiro Coalfield, eastern Hokkaido, Japan (Denticulopsis hyalina Zone, NPD 4B).

onomic status of *D. miocenica* (AKIBA and YANAGISAWA, 1986). However, biometrical measurements show that the two species are significantly different in valve length and width, and thus *D. miocenica* is a distinct species (Fig. 19).

An unusually large valve with oval valve outline, a central raphe and double-layered punctation on the whole valve face is found rarely in the upper part of the *D. hyalina* Zone (NPD 4B) (Pl. 2, Fig. 44; Pl. 10, Figs. 3-9). This form was named *Katahiraia aspera* by KOMURA (1976, p. 385, abb. 5, figs. 1-8, pl.41, figs. 1-5). However, it may possibly be an initial valve of *D. miocenica*. **Phylogenetic relationship**: Based on similarity in morphology and stratigraphic occurrences, *D. miocenica* is believed to have evolved from *D. hyalina* by change in valve outline from linear to oval form. *D. miocenica* terminated the lineage leading from *D. tanimurae* through *D. praehyalina* and *D. hyalina*.

Denticulopsis simonsenii n. sp.

Plate 3, Figs. 1-3; Plate 11, Figs. 1, 5

Synonymy: *Denticula hustedtii* SIMONSEN and KANAYA, 1961, in part, pl. 1, figs. 22, 24, 25, non pl. 1, figs. 19–21; KOIZUMI, 1968, p. 213, pl. 34, figs. 4a–5b, non pl. 34, figs. 6a, 6b; SCHRAD-ER, 1974b, fig. 1: 21; *Denticulopsis hustedtii* (SIMONSEN and KANAYA) SIMONSEN, MARU-YAMA, 1984a, pl. 12, fig. 8, pl. 13, fig. 6, pl. 16, figs. 2, 3; AKIBA and YANAGISAWA, 1986, pl. 18, figs. 4, 5; YANAGISAWA *et al.*, 1989, pl. 6, fig. 1.

Description: Frustule rectangular with rounded corners in girdle view. Valve linear, not elliptical or oval, 9-49 μ m long, 4-8 μ m wide. Transapical striae on valve face finely punctated, not reduced, 22-24 in 10 μ m, puncta in quincunx arrangement. Valve mantle finely punctated. Pseudosepta (primary or secondary pseudosepta) equally spaced, 5.5-8 in 10 μ m, with 1-3 secondary pseudosepta between each two primary pseudosepta. Marginal ribs, very short and sometimes inconspicuous on both sides between each two pseudosepta. Raphe marginal. Copula open with smooth non-punctated sides.

Holotype: Plate 3, Fig. 1; GSJ F12818 deposited in Geological Survey of Japan (Sample N 58, Hataya Formation, Matsushima, Japan. Detailed location of the type sample is shown in fig. 3 of AKIBA *et al.*, 1982).

Stratigraphic occurrence: In the middleto high-latitude North Pacific, this species first occurs in the middle part of the *Denticulopsis hyalina* Zone (NPD 4B), but is in very low abundance until its abrupt increase at the base of the overlying Crucidenticula nicobarica Zone (NPD 5A). Thereafter it maintained its dominance as the most important constituent of the North Pacific diatom assemblage throughout the Middle Miocene. After it gradually decreased in dominance, replaced by its descendant Denticulopsis vulgaris at the base or lowest part of the Late Miocene Denticulopsis dimorpha Zone (NPD 5D), D. simonsenii shows only rare or sporadic occurrence until the top of the D. katayamae Zone (NPD 6A). Its recurrent increase at the base of the Thalassionema schraderi Zone (NPD 6B) and consistent occurrence through this zone and the overlying Rouxia californica Zone (NPD 7A) in DSDP Hole 438 A may be due to reworking from older sediments.

In the equatorial Pacific, D. simonsenii has a shorter range than that in the middle- to high-latitude North Pacific. Its consistent occurrence begins near the base of the Coscinodiscus lewisianus Zone (NTD 6) which roughly coincides with its abrupt increase in the North Pacific. However, BARRON (1985a) reported its earlier isolated occurrence in the underlying B Subzone of the Cestodiscus peplum Zone (NTD 5B), which closely approximates its first occurrence in the North Pacific. D. simonsenii occurs frequently from the middle part of the C. lewisianus Zone to the middle part of the Actinocyclus moronensis Zone (NTD 9) and then abruptly declined, replaced by *Denticulopsis vulgaris*. It became extinct in the lower part of the Coscinodiscus yabei Zone (NTD 10) in the equatorial Pacific.

In the Southern Ocean, *D. simonsenii*, though it has not been differentiated from its related species such as *Denticulopsis vulgaris* and *D. praekatayamae*, occurs from the middle part of the *Nitzschia grossepunctata* Zone (NSD 5) to the top of the *Denticulopsis hustedtii* Zone (NSD 8). The first occurrence datum coincides with that in the middle- to high-latitude North Pacific, but its last occurrence in the lowermost part of the Pliocene is seemingly three million years later than that in the North Pacific. Its sporadic and rare occurrence in the middle and upper part of the *D. hustedtii* Zone suggests that the latest Miocene and earliest Pliocene occurrence of *D. simonsenii* may be reworking as it is in the North Pacific.

Geographic distribution : *D. simonsenii* is a cosmopolitan diatom with broad distribution both in the middle- to high-latitudes and the low-latitude. It may be, however, originally a middle- to high-latitude species because of its more abundant occurrence and longer stratigraphic range in the middle to high-latitudes than in the low-latitude. It was introduced to the low-latitude by a major cooling in the Middle Miocene (BARRON, 1986).

Remarks: This new species is characterized by its linear valve outline and full punctation on valve face. It is distinguished from *D. hustedtii* and *D. crassa* by the linear valve outline. The species differs from *D. vulgaris*, *D. praekatayamae* and *D. katayamae* by the full punctation on valve face.

Phylogenetic relationship: A probable ancestor of this species is *Denticulopsis lauta* because there are no other preceding species that have the same pattern of puncta as that of *D. simonsenii*. This is also supported by the presence of a curious specimen that may be interpreted as an evolutionary intermediate form between the two species (AKIBA, 1975, pl. 1, figs. 3a-b). *D. simonsenii* evolved from *D. lauta* by creating secondary pseudosepta. *D. simonsenii* is an ancestral species of *D. vulgaris*, *D. crassa* and *D. hustedtii*.

Derivation of name: The species is named in honor of Dr. Reimer SIMONSEN who first demonstrated the biostratigraphic value of this diatom group with Dr. Taro KANAYA and established the taxonomy of the genus *Denticulopsis*.

Denticulopsis vulgaris (OKUNO) n. comb.

Plate 3, Figs. 4-8; Plate 11, Figs. 2, 6-10

Basionym: *Denticula lauta* var. *vulgaris* OKUNO, 1964, p. 40, pl. 505, top a.

Synonymy: Denticula hustedtii SIMONSEN et KANAYA, 1961, in part, pl. 1, fig. 21, non pl. 1, figs. 19, 20, 22, 24, 25; KOIZUMI, 1968, pl. 34, figs. 6a, 6b, non pl. 34, figs. 4a-5b; KANAYA, 1971, pl. 40.5, figs. 14a, 14b; Denticula lauta BAILEY (with reduced structure), SCHRADER, 1973b, pl. 1, fig. 11; Denticulopsis hustedtii (SIMONSEN et KANAYA) SIMONSEN, MARU-YAMA, 1984a, pl. 12, figs. 7, 9a, 9b, pl. 16, fig. 1; AKIBA, 1986, pl. 28, fig. 13; AKIBA and YANAGISAWA, 1986, pl. 17, fig. 12, pl. 19, figs. 1-3; YANAGISAWA et al., 1989, pl. 6, fig. 2.

Description: Frustule rectangular with rounded corners in girdle view. Valve linear with rounded apices, $12-45 \,\mu\text{m}$ long, $4-7 \,\mu\text{m}$ wide. Transapical striae on valve face, finely punctated and reduced so that only two striae remain near each pseudosepta with a broad hyaline area between each two pseudosepta (Pl. 11, Figs. 2, 6-8). Valve mantle finely punctated without reduction of puncta (Pl. 11, Fig. 8). Punctation on valve mantle usually single-layered but sometimes double-layered in the lower part of Denticulopsis dimorpha Zone (NPD 5D). Pseudosepta (primary or secondary) equally spaced, 5.5-8 in $10 \,\mu m$, with secondary pseudosepta, 1-3 between each two primary pseudosepta. Marginal ribs short and sometimes inconspicuous between each two pseudosepta on both sides. Raphe marginal. Copula open with smooth non-punctated sides.

Stratigraphic occurrence: In the middleto high-latitude North Pacific, the first occurrence of this species lies within the *Crucidenticula nicobarica* Zone (NPD 5A), but its occurrence remains rare to sporadic until the top of the *Denticulopsis praedimorpha* Zone (NPD 5B). The species became a consistent member of diatom assemblage from the base of the *Thalassiosira yabei* Zone (NPD 5C), and it shows high abundance, dominating over *Denticulopsis simonsenii* in the lower part of the *Denticulopsis dimorpha* Zone (NPD 5D). Thereafter it declined and became a minor element during the remainder of the Late Miocene. Its recurrent increase at the base of

-243 -

the *Thalassionema schraderi* Zone (NPD 6B) in DSDP Hole 438A may be due to reworking related to a hiatus at this level, making it difficult to recognize its last occurrence.

In the equatorial Pacific, *D. vulgaris* has its first occurrence in the upper part of the *Actinocyclus moronensis* Zone (NTD 9), which roughly coincides with its increasing in the middle- to high-latitude North Pacific. It replaces *D. simonsenii* and occurs frequently within the upper part of this zone. It last occurs in the lowest part of the overlying *Coscinodiscus yabei* Zone (NTD 10).

This species is found from Miocene sediments of Chile (Pl. 11, Figs. 9-10). However, its detailed stratigraphic range is unknown in the Southern Hemisphere at present.

Geographic distribution : *D. vulgaris* is broadly distributed in the North Pacific, the equatorial Pacific and the Southern Ocean. It occurs more dominantly with a longer stratigraphic range in the North Pacific than in the equatorial Pacific. These occurrences indicate that this species is originally and mainly a middle- to high-latitude species.

Remarks: The most characteristic feature of this species is the reduction of puncta on valve face so that only two striae remain near each pseudoseptum. This species is clearly distinguished from D. simonsenii by this reduction of puncta. It is very similar to D. praekatayamae, but differs by the continuity of the transapical striae and also by a less silicified valve. The species is distinguished from D. hustedtii by its linear valve outline. Some specimens from the *D. dimorpha* Zone are thickly silicified with double-layered punctation on valve mantle (Pl. 3, Fig. 6) and show morphologic similarity to D. praekatayamae. These forms may be evolutionary transitional forms between the two species.

An unusually large valve with a central raphe (Pl. 3, Fig. 29) is found rarely. This type of valve was described as *Yoshidaia loculata* KOMURA (KOMURA, 1976, p. 391–392, abb. 11, figs. 1–5, pl. 40, fig. 11, pl. 41, fig. 9). However it may possibly be an initial valve of *D. vul*

garis because of morphologic similarity between them except for a difference in location of raphe.

Discussion: The species was described initially as a variety of *Denticula lauta* by OKUNO (1964) from the Usujiri deposit at Futami, southern Hokkaido, Japan. However, its holotype specimen apparently possesses secondary pseudosepta and therefore it is not a variety of *D. lauta*. SCHRADER (1973b) referred to this taxon but treated it as a synonym of *D. lauta*. He also noticed the reduction of transapical striae in *Denticula hustedtii* and described a specimen that can now be included in *D. vulgaris* (SCHRADER, 1973b, p. 418). Nevertheless, he illustrated this specimen as *Denticula lauta* (with reduced structure). No one has referred to this taxon since then.

Phylogenetic relationship: It is certain that *D. vulgaris* evolved from *D. simonsenii* through reduction of puncta on valve face because of intimate morphologic similarity between the two species. *D. vulgaris* gave rise to *D. praekatayamae* by further reducing of puncta and thick silicification.

Denticulopsis praekatayamae n. sp.

Plate 3, Figs. 9-11, 20; Plate 11, Figs. 3, 14-16

Synonymy: *Denticulopsis katayamae* MARU-YAMA, 1984a, in part, pl. 17, figs. 14, 17, non pl. 17, figs. 1–13, 15, 16, 18–23; AKIBA and YANAGISAWA, 1986, pl. 20, figs. 2, 3, 6.

Description: Frustule rectangular with rounded corners in girdle view. Valve strongly silicified, linear with rounded apices, 15-44 μ m long, 5-8 μ m wide. Transapical striae strongly reduced so that only two striae of sporadic puncta remain near each pseudoseptum. Valve mantle perforated by doublelayered punctation composed of outer fine and inner coarse punctations. Pseudosepta (primary or secondary) equally spaced, 6-7 in 10 μ m, with secondary pseudosepta 1-3 between each two primary pseudosepta. Marginal ribs short and sometimes inconspicuous between pseudosepta on both sides. Raphe marginal. Copula open with smooth non-punctated sides.

Holotype: Plate 3, Fig. 10; GSJ F12817 deposited in Geological Survey of Japan (Sample DSDP Hole 438A, 56 cc, northwest Pacific).

Stratigraphic distribution: In the middleto high-latitude North Pacific, the first occurrence of this species is in the middle part of the *D. dimorpha* Zone (NPD 5D), slightly prior to that of *D. katayamae*. Its last occurrence is observed in the uppermost part of the overlying *D. katayamae* Zone (NPD 6A). The species shows spot occurrence at the uppermost part of the *Actinocyclus moronensis* Zone (NTD 9) in the equatorial Pacific.

Geographic distribution: The species is found frequently in the middle- to high-latitude North Pacific and the Southern Ocean, but rarely in the equatorial Pacific. This species is mainly a middle- to high-latitude species.

Remarks: Diagnostic characters of this new species are its strongly silicified valve and reduced punctation on valve face with remaining two striae of sporadic puncta near each pseudoseptum. *D. praekatayamae* resembles *D. katayamae*, but is distinguished by the presence of striae on valve face. It is also similar to *D. vulgaris*, but differs by its sporadic puncta of striae and thick silicification.

Phylogenetic relationship: The species evolved from *D. vulgaris* through further reduction of puncta on valve face associated with strong silicification of valve, and it developed into *D. katayamae* by complete reduction of puncta.

Denticulopsis katayamae MARUYAMA emend.

Plate 3, Figs. 12, 13, 28; Plate 11, Fig. 4

MARUYAMA, 1984a, p. 158–159, pl. 12, figs. 1a–6, pl. 17, figs. 1–13, 15, 16, 18–23, non pl. 17, figs. 14, 17; KOIZUMI and TANIMURA, 1985, pl.

1, figs. 5, 6; AKIBA, 1986, pl. 28, figs. 1-4; AKIBA and YANAGISAWA, 1986, p. 489, pl. 17, figs. 1-3, 6, pl. 19, figs. 6-9, pl. 20, figs. 1, 4, 5, 7, non pl. 20, figs. 2, 3, 6.

Synonymy: Denticula hyalina var. hustedtii SCHRADER, 1973b, p. 418, non pl. 1, figs. 9, 21; Denticulopsis aff. hyalina var. hustedtii (SCHRADER) SIMONSEN, ORESHKINA, 1985, pl. 1, figs. 11-13.

Emended description : Frustule rectangular with rounded corners in girdle view. Valve linear with bluntly rounded apices, $7-37 \,\mu m$ long, $4-7 \,\mu m$ wide. Valve face almost hyaline. Cluster of fine puncta arranged in a longitudinal line along raphe-bearing margin, looking like large pores in LM. Valve mantle perforated by double-layered punctation composed of outer fine and inner coarse punctations. Pseudosepta (primary or secondary) equally spaced, 6-7 in $10 \,\mu\text{m}$. Secondary pseudosepta 1-3 between each two primary pseudosepta. Marginal ribs short and inconspicuous between each two pseudosepta. Raphe marginal. Copula open with smooth non-punctated sides.

Stratigraphic occurrence: The species is common to abundant in the Late Miocene *D. katayamae* Zone (NPD 6A) and characterizes this zone. Its first occurrence is recognized in the middle part of the *D. dimorpha* Zone (NPD 5D) and its last occurrence defines the top of the *D. katayamae* Zone.

Geographic distribution: The species is abundantly distributed in the North Pacific but not found in the equatorial Pacific.

Remarks: *D. katayamae* is characterized by hyaline valve face and thickly silicified valve. It is distinguished from *D. praekatayamae* by the absence of transapical striae on valve face. This species resembles *D. hyalina* in having hyaline valve face, but clearly differs by the presence of secondary pseudosepta.

An oval form (Pl. 3, Fig. 28), which is found sporadically in the upper part of the *D. katayamae* Zone, may be a distinct taxon but more stratigraphic data are required to establish a new taxon. **Discussion**: In the original description (MARUYAMA, 1984a, p. 158-159), a expression, "in some specimens sparsely punctate" must be omitted because it describes *D. prae-katayamae* n. sp.

This species was described correctly by SCHRADER (1973b) as *Denticula hyalina* var. *hustedtii*. However, his holotype specimen (SCHRADER, 1973b, pl. 1, fig. 9) does not fit his description; namely it lacks secondary pseudosepta which is the most distinctive feature that distinguishes the variety from the nominate variety. Consequently, the holotype of *D. hyalina* var. *hustedtii* is undoubtedly *D. hyalina* and SCHRADER's (1973b) taxon is invalid.

Phylogenetic relationship: This species is surely a descendant of *D. praekatayamae* because of common features between the two species. AKIBA and YANAGISAWA (1986) suggested another possible evolutionary change from *D. hyalina* to *D. katayamae*. This possibility is, however, now rejected because of more intimate and graded morphologic change from *D. praekatayamae* to *D. katayamae*. *D. katayamae* is the last species of the lineage composed of *D. simonsenii*, *D. vulgaris*, *D. praekatayamae* and *D. katayamae*.

Denticulopsis delicata n. sp. Plate 7, Figs. 1-4

Description: Valve delicate, linear and slender, $36-53 \,\mu m \, \log, \, 5.5-6.5 \,\mu m$ wide in observed specimens. Valve face seems hyaline in ordinary LM observation. Pseudosepta (primary or secondary) equally spaced, ca. 7 in $10 \,\mu m$. Primary pseudosepta with poorly developed narrow basal ridge. Secondary pseudosepta present 1-2 between each two primary pseudosepta. Marginal ribs short and inconspicuous on both sides between pseudosepta. Raphe marginal.

Holotype: Plate 7, Fig. 1; GSJ F12891 deposited in Geological Survey of Japan (Sample DSDP Hole 266, 10-5, 87-90 cm, Southern Ocean).

Stratigraphic occurrence: Not well known at present.

Geographic distribution : The species is found only from the Southern Ocean.

Remarks: The characteristic feature of this species is its delicate valve with seemingly hyaline valve face. It is similar to *D. katayamae* in the hyaline valve face, but differs by a more linear and more thinly silicified valve.

Discussion: The features of this species are just fit with those of *Denticula* aff. *seminae*, a taxon which SCHRADER (1976) recognized in the DSDP Hole 278 in the Southern Ocean, although he presented no illustration of the taxon. According to his occurrence chart, *D. seminae* aff. *seminae* occurs in the lower part of the *D. lauta – D. hustedtii* Zone (NSD 7) (Fig. 10). Further biostratigraphic study is needed to establish the stratigraphic distribution and phylogeny of this species.

Denticulopsis hustedtii (SIMONSEN et KANAYA) SIMONSEN emend.

Plate 3, Figs. 14-19; Plate 11, Figs. 11-13.

SIMONSEN, 1979, p. 64.

Synonymy: Denticula lauta BAILEY, GRUNOW in VAN HEURCK, 1880-1885, pl. 49, figs. 1, 2; Denticula hustedtii SIMONSEN and KANAYA, 1961, in part, pl. 1. fig. 19, non pl. 1, figs. 20-22, 24, 25; BARRON, 1973, pl. 1, fig. 6; SCHRADER, 1974b, fig. 1:20; BARRON, 1975, pl. 8, fig. 9, non pl. 8, fig. 10; AKIBA, 1979, pl. 3, fig. 2; Denticula hustedtii SIMONSEN and KANAYA var. 1, BARRON, 1976, p. 55, pl. 2, figs. 27, 34; Denticulopsis hustedtii (SIMONSEN and KANAYA) SIMONSEN (elliptical form), MARU-YAMA, 1984a, pl. 13, figs. 1a-3, pl. 16, figs. 4, 5. Denticulopsis hustedtii (SIMONSEN and KANAYA) SIMONSEN, AKIBA, 1986, pl. 28, figs. 16, 17; Denticulopsis hustedtii SIMONSEN et KANAYA, ITO, 1986, pl. 1, fig. 14.

Emended description: Frustule rectangular with rounded corners in girdle view. Valve elliptical or lanceolate with acutely rounded apices, 9-37 μ m long, 6-10 μ m wide. Transapical striae, finely punctated, 22-26 in 10 μ m, in quincunx arrangement. Punctation on valve face full in some specimens, or reduced in part in other specimens so that only two striae remain near each pseudoseptum. Valve mantle low, punctated finely without reduction of puncta. Pseudosepta (primary or secondary) equally spaced, 6-8 in 10 μ m, with secondary pseudosepta 1-3 between each two primary pseudosepta. Marginal ribs very short on both sides between each two pseudosepta. Raphe marginal. Copula open with smooth non-punctated sides.

Holotype : SIMONSEN and KANAYA, 1961, pl. 1, fig. 19 (Plate 3, Fig. 15).

Stratigraphic occurrence: This species is restricted within the late Middle Miocene *Thalassiosira yabei* Zone (NPD 5C) and characteristic of this zone. Its first occurrence is slightly above the base of this zone and its last occurrence lies just below the top of this zone.

Geographic distribution: The species is found in the North Pacific and the Southern Ocean, but not distributed in the equatorial Pacific.

Remarks: D. hustedtii whose taxonomic concept is emended here is characterized by its elliptical or lanceolate valve outline which distinguishes the species from other Denticulo*psis* species. Reduction of puncta on valve face varies from almost full punctation (Pl. 3, Fig. 15) to partly reduction with only two striae (Pl. 3, Figs. 14, 17-18). The species has resemblance to D. simonsenii and D. vulgaris, but differs by the lanceolate valve outline and the narrower interval between pseudosepta. Biometrical analysis indicates that this species differs significantly from the latter two species in valve length and width (Fig. 20). It resembles D. crassa, but differs by the lanceolate valve outline with more acutely rounded apices, a less silicified valve, a narrower deck and more slender basal ridges.

Discussion: MARUYAMA (1984a) first noticed the stratigraphic value of this species. He described this species as *D. hustedtii* (ellip-



Fig. 20 Plot of width and length in valves of Denticulopsis hustedtii, D. simonsenii and D. vulgaris. Sample WK 205, Nakayama Formation, Sado Island, Japan (Thalassiosira yabei Zone, NPD 5C).

tical form) and showed that it was a useful marker of the T. *yabei* Zone (NPD 5C) in the North Pacific.

The taxonomic concept of *Denticulopsis* hustedtii in SIMONSEN and KANAYA (1961) and SIMONSEN (1979) is too broad in variation of valve shape and punctation pattern. This

| Punctation | Valve outline | | |
|------------|-----------------------------|-----------|--------------|
| | Linear | Oval | Lanceolate |
| Full | D. simonesenii | | D. hustedtii |
| Reduced | D. vulgaris | D. crassa | |
| Sporadic | D. praekatayamae | | |
| Hyaline | D. katayamae D. delicata | | |

Table 9Classification of Denticulopsis
simonsenii group.

study divided this species group into seven species including *D. katayamae* and *D. vulgaris* based on the differences in valve outline and punctation on valve face (Table 9). As the type specimen of *D. hustedtii* is included in a group of lanceolate valve outline, the species name *D. hustedtii* is retained for these lanceolate group.

Phylogenetic relationship: *D. hustedtii* apparently branched off from *D. simonsenii* by change in valve outline from linear form to lanceolate form. This species did not leave any descendants.

Denticulopsis crassa n. sp. Plate 3, Figs. 21-27; Plate 12, Figs. 1-8

Synonymy: Denticula hustedtii SIMONSEN and KANAYA, SCHRADER, 1973a, pl. 2, figs. 29, 30; Denticulopsis hustedtii (SIMONSEN and KANAYA) SIMONSEN, AKIBA, 1986, pl. 28, figs. 5, 9, 14, 15, 18; AKIBA and YANAGISAWA, 1986, pl. 17, figs. 9, 10, 20.

Description: Frustule rectangular with rounded corners in girdle view. Valve thickly silicified, ovate with broadly rounded apices, $10-32 \ \mu m$ long, $5.5-11 \ \mu m$ wide. Transapical striae on valve face, 12-15 in $10 \ \mu m$ with puncta slightly reduced in quincunx arrangement. Valve mantle more finely and densely punctated than valve face. Pseudosepta (primary or secondary) equally spaced, 5-6 in $10 \ \mu m$, with secondary pseudosepta, 1-2 between each two primary pseudosepta. Basal ridge short and broad. Marginal ribs short on both sides between each two pseudosepta. Deck broad with small foramina. Copula open or closed with smooth non-punctated sides. Apical thickening not developed in closed copula.

Holotype: Plate 3, Fig. 23; GSJ F12893 deposited in Geological Survey of Japan (Sample DSDP Hole 438A, 65-7, 17-18 cm, northwest Pacific).

Stratigraphic occurrence: In the middleto high-latitude North Pacific, the first occurrence of this species roughly coincides with the base of the *D. praedimorpha* Zone (NPD 5B) and its last occurrence lies in the lower part of the *D. dimorpha* Zone (NPD 5D). This species has two abundance peaks : one in the middle part of the *D. praedimorpha* Zone and the other in the middle part of the *Thalassiosira yabei* Zone (Table 4, Fig. 8).

Geographic distribution: This species is distributed both in the middle- to high-latitude North Pacific and the Southern Ocean but not found in the equatorial Pacific. It is, therefore, a middle- to high-latitude species.

Remarks : *D. crassa* is distinguished from *D. simonsenii*, *D. vulgaris*, *D. praekatayamae* and *D. katayamae* by its oval shape, a broader deck with smaller foramina, short and robust basal ridges and the presence of closed copula. Biometrical measurement indicates that *D. crassa* differs significantly from *D. simonsenii* and *D. vulgaris* in width and length (Fig. 21). This species is similar to *D. hustedtii* when the valve outline is not so oval, but differs by a more thickly silicified valve, broader basal ridges, a broader deck and more rounded apices.

D. crassa is also very similar to *D. ovata* in valve outline. In particular, the valve of *D. ovata* combined with its closed copula (Pl. 5, Fig. 19) is hardly distinguishable from the valve of *D. crassa* (Pl. 3, Fig. 23). Nevertheless, careful observation can distinguish the two species; In *D. ovata*, the suture line between the basal ridge and the pair of inner



Fig. 21 Plot of width and length in valves of Denticulopsis crassa and D. simonsenii.
Sample DSDP Hole 438A, 65-7, 17-18 cm (Denticulopsis praedimorpha Zone).

extensions are not present (the right figure of Fig. 19 in Plate 5), whereas *D. crassa* clearly possesses this suture line (Pl. 12, Fig. 3).

The closed copula of *D. crassa* resembles that of *D. praedimorpha* but is distinguished by the following characteristics : (1) *D. crassa* is more ovate in outline than *D. praedimorpha*. (2) *D. crassa* has no silicified apical thickening in its closed copula, while *D. praedimorpha* has well developed apical thickings except for its small form.

Phylogenetic relationship: This species is an evolutionary offshoot of *D. simonsenii*. It evolved from the latter species by change in valve outline to oval form, thick silicification and development of closed copula. *D. crassa* left no descendant.

Denticulopsis praedimorpha var. minor n. var.

Plate 4, Figs. 1, 2, 8, 9, 11, 21-24; Plate 7, Figs. 5, 6, 10; Plate 12, Fig. 9

Synonymy: Denticulopsis praedimorpha (AKIBA) BARRON, 1981a, pl. 4, figs. 9, 10; Denticulopsis cf. dimorpha (SCHRADER) SIMON-SEN, AKIBA, 1982, pl. 10, fig. 19; Denticulopsis praedimorpha AKIBA, MARUYAMA, 1984a, pl. 15, fig. 1, pl. 18, fig. 11, Denticulopsis praedimorpha (AKIBA) BARRON ex AKIBA, BARRON, 1985b, fig. 13.24; Denticulopsis praedimorpha BARRON ex AKIBA, ORESHKINA, 1985, pl. 1, fig. 4; AKIBA and YANAGISAWA, 1986, pl. 13, figs. 3, 4, 16, 24.

Description: Valve linear with rounded apices, small, 6-19 μ m mostly 6-13 μ m long, 2.5-4 μ m wide. Pseudosepta 6-7 in 10 μ m. Silicified inner apical thickening of closed copula absent. Other features are nearly the same as those of the nominative variety.

Holotype: Plate 4, Fig. 8 (closed copula); GSJ F12815 deposited in Geological Survey of Japan (DSDP Hole 438 A, 66-1, 121-123 cm, northwest Pacific)

Stratigraphic occurrence: The variety occurs from the base of the *D. praedimorpha* Zone (NPD 5B) to the top of this zone.

Remarks: The variety differs from *D.* praedimorpha var. praedimorpha and var. robusta by the absence of apical thickening of closed copula and smaller size (less than 4 μ m in width, Fig. 22). It is distinguished from *D.* praedimorpha var. intermedia by the lack of partially developed cross rod of closed copula.

Phylogenetic relationship: This variety is the most primitive form of *D. praedimorpha*. It is very similar to the primitive form of *Denticulopsis lauta* in small valve size, full punctation on valve face and the presence of two types of copula. There is a stratigraphic gap between the last abundant occurrence of *D. lauta* and the first occurrence of this variety in the North Pacific. However, the morphologic similarities mentioned above sug-



Bulletin of the Geological Survey of Japan, Vol. 41, No. 5

Fig. 22 Plot of width and length in closed copulae of *Denticulopsis praedimorpha*. A : lower part of *Denticulopsis praedimorpha* Zone (NPD 5B); B : middle part of the zone; C : upper part of the zone; D : specimens with two pairs of inner extensions, samples DSDP Hole 438A, 66-1 (118-122 cm), 65-3 (100-103 cm), 65-1 (54-56 cm), 64-5 (30-32 cm), 64-3 (10-14 cm); E : specimens with four pairs of inner extensions, samples are the same as those used for Figure D.

gests that *D. praedimorpha* var. *minor* evolved from the primitive form of *D. lauta* by acquiring a closed copula with well-developed pair of inner extensions. This variety is an ancestor of *D. praedimorpha* var. *praedimorpha*, var. *intermedia* and *D. barronii*.

Denticulopsis praedimorpha BARRON ex Akiba var. praedimorpha

Plate 4, Figs. 3-5, 10, 12-17, 39; Plate 5, Figs. 4-12

AKIBA, 1982, p. 46-48, pl. 11, figs. 9a-16, 18-27b; ORESHKINA, 1985, pl. 1, fig. 3; AKIBA, 1986, pl. 27, figs. 15-26; AKIBA and YANAGI-SAWA, 1986, p. 489-490, pl. 13, figs. 1, 2, 5-15, 17-23, 25-28, pl. 14, figs. 1-12; YANAGISAWA *et al.*, 1989, pl. 6, fig. 6.

Synonymy: Denticula lauta BAILEY, KANAYA, 1959, p. 112-116, in part, pl. 10, figs. 7-9, 16, non pl. 10, figs. 10a-15; SIMONSEN and KANAYA, 1961, pl. 1, figs. 6-10, non pl. 1, figs. 1-5; Denticula? sp., KANAYA, 1959, p. 116, pl. 10, figs. 17a-20b; Denticula praedimorpha AKIBA, 1979, pl. 1, figs. 11a-19, pl. 2, figs. 1a-5, 7a-8b, 11-21b, nom. invalid; BARRON, 1980, p. 672, pl. 1, figs. 18-20; Denticulopsis praedimorpha (AKIBA) BARRON, 1981a, p. 529, pl. 4, fig. 8, non pl. 4, figs. 9, 10; Denticulopsis praedimorpha (AKIBA ex BARRON) BARRON, AKIBA et al., 1982, pl. 3, figs. 58-62; Denticulopsis praedimorpha AKIBA, MARUYAMA, 1984a, pl. 15, figs. 2-7, pl. 18, figs. 1-6, 10, pl. 19, figs. 1-15; Denticulopsis praedimorpha (AKIBA) BARRON ex AKIBA, BARRON 1985b, p. 785, fig. 13.25.

Description: Frustule rectangular with rounded corners in girdle view. Valve linear to linear elliptical with bluntly rounded apices, $9-24 \,\mu\text{m}$ long, $4-6.5 \,\mu\text{m}$ wide. Transapical striae on valve face finely punctated, 24-26 in $10 \,\mu \text{m}$, arranged in quincunx. Valve mantle high perforated by fine puncta. Primary pseudosepta, about 5 in $10 \,\mu m$. In Vc valve, primary pseudosepta with high and short basal ridges, about 5 in $10 \,\mu\text{m}$, with 2 or 3 apical pseudosepta near each apex. In Vo valve, primary pseudosepta with low and indistinct basal ridges, about 4-5 in $10 \,\mu$ m. Secondary pseudosepta absent. Marginal ribs between each two pseudosepta on both sides. Raphe marginal: Copula closed or open. Closed copula with serrate edge (Ccr) or with smooth edge (Ccm), combined with Vc valve. In closed copula, apical thickening well developed. Open copula with punctated sides (Cop), combined with Vo valve.

Stratigraphic occurrence: The variety first occurs in the lower part of the *D. praedimorpha* Zone (NPD 5B) and last at the top of this zone in the middle- to high-latitude North Pacific. In the Southern Ocean, *D. praedimorpha* is found in the middle part of the *Nitzschia denticuloides* Zone (NSD 6).

Geographic distribution : *D. praedimorpha* occurs in the middle- to high-latitude North Pacific, the Norwegian Sea and the Southern Ocean. It is not distributed in the equatorial Pacific. Hence, *D. praedimorpha* is a middle-to high-latitude species.

Remarks : *D. praedimorpha* var. *praedimorpha* differs from the var. *minor* by the presence of apical thickening of closed copula and a larger valve (4-6.5 μ m wide, Fig. 22). It is distinguished from the var. *robusta* by a relatively smaller and slender valve (less than 6.5 μ m wide, Fig. 22) and the absence of partially developed cross rod of closed copula. The variety *praedimorpha* differs from the var. *intermedia* by the lack of partially developed cross rods of closed copula.

D. praedimorpha is different from *D. dimorpha* and *D. ovata* in that it lacks complete cross rods of closed copula. *D. praedimorpha* differs from *D. barronii* mainly by the absence of secondary pseudosepta in Vc valve. The two species also differ in geographic distribution : *D. praedimorpha* is a middle- to highlatitude species, while *D. barronii* is distributed in the low-latitude.

Because of close resemblance, the valve of *D. praedimorpha* have been confused with the valve of *D. lauta* by many previous studies. However, the valves of the two species are clearly distinguished by the length and height of basal ridge : basal ridges of Vc valve of *D. praedimorpha* are shorter and higher than those of *D. lauta*, whereas basal ridge of Vo valve of *D. praedimorpha* are lower and more indistinct than those of *D. lauta* (Compare Figures 1 and 5 in Plate 5). More detailed

morphologic differences between *D. lauta*, *D. praedimorpha* and *D. dimorpha* are discussed in remarks of *D. lauta* (p. 236).

The three types of copulae of *D. praedimorpha* might theoretically form nine (3×3) combinations in frustule (Table 3), but we have observed only seven combinations as it follows:

Cop/Cop: Pl. 4, Fig. 5.

- Cop/Ccr: Pl. 4, Fig. 17; AKIBA and YANAGISAWA, 1986, pl. 14, fig. 12.
- Cop/Ccr : Pl. 5, Fig. 10.

Ccr/Ccr : Pl. 4, Fig. 35.

Ccr/Ccm : Pl. 5, Fig. 11.

Ccm/Ccr: not illustrated.

Ccm/Ccm : Pl. 5, Fig. 12 ; Pl. 4, Fig. 16 ; Pl. 4, Fig. 24 ; AKIBA and YANAGI-SAWA, 1986, pl. 14, fig. 11.

(In each combination, the left indicates epicopula and the right indicates hypocopula.) We have not yet recognized combinations of Ccr/Cop and Ccm/Cop.

Phylogenetic relationship: *D. praedimorpha* var. *praedimorpha* evolved from its variety *minor* through development of apical thickening of closed copula and an increase in size.

Denticulopsis praedimorpha var. robusta n. var.

Plate 4, Figs. 6, 7, 18-20, 34, 35; Plate 12, Figs. 10-14

Synonymy: Denticula praedimorpha AKIBA, 1979, pl. 2, figs. 9, 10; Denticulopsis praedimorpha BARRON ex AKIBA, 1982, pl. 11, fig. 11; AKIBA, 1986, pl. 27, fig. 14; Denticulopsis praedimorpha AKIBA, MARUYAMA, 1984a, pl. 18, figs. 7-9.

Description : Valve robust, linear-elliptical with rounded apices, $18-25 \,\mu\text{m}$ long, $7-9 \,\mu\text{m}$ wide. Valve mantle perforated with double-layered punctation composed of outer fine and inner coarse perforations. Pseudosepta 4-5 in $10 \,\mu\text{m}$. Closed copula robust, sometimes with cross rods. Apical thickening of closed copula well developed. Other features are almost the

same as those of the nominative variety.

Holotype: Plate 4, Fig. 19 (closed copula); GSJ F12816 deposited in Geological Survey of Japan (DSDP Hole 438A, 64-3, 10-14 cm, northwest Pacific)

Stratigraphic occurrence: The variety occurs in the upper part of the *D. praedimorpha* Zone (NPD 5B).

Remarks: The variety differs from varieties *praedimorpha* and *minor* in a robust larger valve (more than $7 \,\mu\text{m}$ in width, Fig. 22), double-layered punctation on valve mantle and its robust closed copula which sometimes has partially developed cross rods.

Phylogenetic relationship: It is certain that the variety *robusta* is a descendant of the var. *praedimorpha* because of morphologic continuity between them. The var. *robusta* evolved from the var. *praedimorpha* by an increase in size and partially developed cross rods of closed copula. It did not leave any descendants.

Denticulopsis praedimorpha var. intermedia n. var.

Plate 7, Figs. 7-9, 11-13

Synonym : Denticulopsis cf. dimorpha (SCHRADER) SIMONSEN, AKIBA, 1982, pl. 10, fig. 12.

Description: Valve linear with bluntly rounded apices, small $13-27 \,\mu$ m long, $5-6 \,\mu$ m wide. Vc valve has two types of primary pseudosepta; one with a short basal ridge and the other without basal ridge. The latter type looks like a secondary pseudoseptum in valve view. Copula open or closed. Closed copula with truncated pairs of inner extensions and some partially developed cross rods. Apical thickening not developed.

Holotype: Plate 7, Fig. 13 (Closed copula); GSJ F12892 deposited in Geological Survey of Japan (Sample DSDP Hole 266, 10-5, 87-90 cm, Southern Ocean).

Stratigraphic occurrence: This variety is found only from DSDP Hole 266 (this study) and JDS 15775 (the Southern Ocean; AKIBA,

1982) at present.

Geographic distribution: The variety is known from the Southern Ocean but not found in the middle- to high-latitude North Pacific and the low-latitude.

Remarks: This form differs from *D. praedimorpha* var. *minor* by partial development of cross rods in closed copula. It is very similar to *D. praedimorpha* var. *robusta* in that both have partially developed cross rods. However, the var. *intermedia* differs from the var. *robusta* by smaller size and the absence of apical thickening in the closed copula, as well as by the different distribution pattern of cross rods. The cross rods of the var. *robusta* are always located just near each apices (Pl. 4, Figs. 19, 20), while the location of cross rods is not fixed in the var. *intermedia* (Pl. 7, Figs. 11-13).

The Vc valve of var. *intermedia* (Pl. 7, Figs. 7-9) is hardly distinguishable from that of *D. barronii* (Pl. 4, Fig. 31). However, the two taxa differ in morphology of closed copula (Pl. 7, Figs. 11-13; Pl. 4, Figs. 26-30). *D. praedimorpha* var. *intermedia* resembles *D. dimorpha* var. *dimorpha* but differs by partial development of cross rods and the presence of basal ridge.

Phylogenetic relationship: Although its precise stratigraphic range is not known at present, *D. praedimorpha* var. *intermedia* is probably an evolutionary intermediate form between *D. praedimorpha* and *D. dimorpha*. The var. *intermedia* descended from the var. *minor* by partial development of cross rods of closed copula and evolved into *D. dimorpha* var. *dimorpha*.

Denticulopsis barronii n. sp.

Plate 4, Figs. 25-33, 36-38

Synonymy: Denticulopsis praedimorpha (AKIBA) AKIBA, BARRON, 1985a, pl. 9, figs. 9, 10 (Closed copula).

Description: Valve linear with rounded apices, $10-28 \ \mu m$ long, $3.5-5 \ \mu m$ wide. Transapical striae finely punctated, $24-26 \ in 10 \ \mu m$.

Puncta arranged in quincunx, so that oblique rows formed. Pseudosepta, 7.5-10 in $10 \,\mu m$. Two types of valves present. One type Vc has both primary and secondary pseudosepta, each primary pseudoseptum with a short and distinct basal ridge (Pl. 4, Fig. 31). The other type Vo has only primary pseudosepta with low and indistinct basal ridges. (Pl. 4, Fig. 25). Between each two pseudosepta, short and indistinct marginal ribs present. Raphe marginal. Copula closed or open. Closed copula not punctated, with serrate edge (Ccr, Pl. 4, Fig. 32) or smooth edge (Ccm, Pl. 4, Fig. 33). Silicified apical thickening of closed copula absent or very poorly developed. Open copula (Cop) punctated with one row of puncta (Pl. 4, Fig. 38). Closed copula (Ccr and Ccm) connected with Vc valve, whereas open copula (Cop) with Vo valve.

Holotype: Plate 4, Fig. 37 (Vc valve connected with closed copula); GSJ F12803 deposited in Geological Survey of Japan (Sample DSDP Hole 77B, 20-6, 38-40 cm, eastern equatorial Pacific).

Stratigraphic occurrence: The species occurs from the uppermost part of the *Coscinodiscus gigas* var. *diorama* Zone (NTD 7) to the lower part of the *Craspedodiscus coscinodiscus* Zone (NTD 8) in the equatorial Pacific.

Geographic distribution : This new species is found only in the eastern equatorial Pacific and not in the middle- to high-latitude North Pacific.

Remarks: No complete frustule is observed in this study, but the species probably has dimorphic or polymorphic frustules as *D. praedimorpha* does.

This species bears close resemblance to *D.* praedimorpha, but differs by the presence of secondary pseudosepta of Vc valve. Closed copulae of *D. barronii* and *D. praedimorpha* are very similar to each other, but the number of pairs of teeth-like inner extensions distinguishes the two species; both odd and even numbers are permitted in *D. barronii*, whereas only odd numbers are observed in *D. praedi*- *morpha*. The Vo valve of *D. barronii* also resembles *D. simonsenii* in that both have secondary pseudosepta, but *D. barronii* differs from *D. simonsenii* by the shorter basal ridges of primary pseudosepta.

Phylogenetic relationship: This species is probably a descendant of *D. praedimorpha* because of close morphologic similarities and stratigraphic range. Of the four varieties of *D. praedimorpha*, the var. *minor* is the most similar to *D. barronii* in the lack of apical thickening of closed copula, the absence of partial cross rods and relatively small size. Hence, *D. barronii* may have evolved from *D. praedimorpha* var. *minor* through development of secondary pseudosepta. This species left no descendant.

Derivation of name: The species is dedicated to Dr. John A. BARRON of U.S. Geological Survey, who first illustrated this species as *D. praedimorpha*.

Denticulopsis dimorpha (SCHRADER) SIMONSEN var. dimorpha

Plate 4, Figs. 42-49; Plate 7, Figs. 14-16

SIMONSEN, 1979, p. 64; BARRON, 1981a, pl. 4, fig. 7; AKIBA, 1982, pl. 11, figs. 1, 5–6a; AKIBA *et al.*, 1982, pl. 3, figs. 63–65; MARUYAMA, 1984a, pl. 15, figs. 8–11; pl. 18, figs. 12–33; pl. 20, figs. 1–3, 5–18; AKIBA, 1986, pl. 27, figs. 3, 4, 7–9, 11–13; AKIBA and YANAGISAWA, 1986, p. 488, pl. 15, figs. 2–4, 17, 18, 20, 23–25; YANAGISAWA *et al.*, 1989, pl. 6, fig. 7.

Synonymy: Denticula dimorpha SCHRADER, 1973a, p. 704, pl. 1, figs. 37-44, 46; SCHRADER, 1973b, p. 418, pl. 1, figs. 16, 17; SCHRADER, 1974b, fig. 1:15; KOIZUMI, 1975a, pl. 1, figs. 27, 28; KOIZUMI, 1975c, pl. 1, fig. 10; BARRON, 1975, pl. 8, fig. 7; BARRON, 1976, pl. II, figs. 25, 33; AKIBA, 1979, pl. 1, figs. 1a, 1b, 4, 9a-10b; Denticula lauta BAILEY, KOIZUMI, 1973, pl. 5, figs. 26- 28.

Description: Frustule rectangular with rounded corners in girdle view. Valve linear with rounded apices, relatively small, 8-21.5 μ m long, 3-5 μ m wide. Valve face and mantle perforated with single-layered punctation to form transapical striae, 24-26 in $10 \,\mu$ m. In Vc valve, primary pseudosepta without basal ridges, 6-7 in 10 μ m. In Vo valve, primary pseudosepta with low and indistinct basal ridges, 6-7 in $10 \,\mu m$. Secondary pseudosepta absent. Marginal ribs between each two pseudosepta on both sides. Raphe marginal. Copula closed with serrate edge (Ccr) or closed with smooth edge (Ccm), open with punctated sides (Cop). Closed copula with complete cross rods and with no or poorly developed apical thickenings. Closed copula combined with Vc valve and open copula with Vo valve.

Stratigraphic occurrence: The total range of this variety defines the *D. dimorpha* Zone (NPD 5D) in the middle- to high-latitude North Pacific. In the Southern Ocean, the species, though this variety and var. *areolata* are not distinguished, first occurs at about 11. 1Ma (BARRON, personal communication, 1988). It last occurs at the top of the *Denticulopsis lauta-Denticulopsis hustedtii* Zone (NSD 7).

Geographic distribution: The species is found in the middle- to high-latitude North Pacific, the Norwegian Sea and the Southern Ocean, but not in the equatorial Pacific.

Remarks: This nominative variety of *D.* dimorpha is distinguished from the var. areolata by its single-layered punctation and smaller size (less than 5 μ m in width, Figs. 23, 24). A transitional form between the two varieties with poorly developed double-layered punctation on the valve face (Pl. 4, Fig. 47) occurs prior to the first occurrence of the typical form of *D. dimorpha* var. areolata (Table 4). This form is tentatively included in the var. dimorpha in this paper.

D. dimorpha is distinguished from *D. praedimorpha* and *D. barronii* by the presence of completely developed cross rods of closed copula and the absence of basal ridge of Vc valve. Differences between *D. lauta*, *D. praedimorpha* and *D. dimorpha* are discussed in remarks of *D. lauta* (p. 236).



Fig. 23 Plot of width and length in valves of *Denticulopsis dimorpha*. Left : lower part of *D. dimorpha* Zone (NPD 5D); Right : upper part of the zone.

Phylogenetic relationship: As stated by MARUYAMA (1984a) and AKIBA and YANAGI-SAWA (1986), it is evident that *D. dimorpha* has very close relationship to *D. praedimorpha* on the basis of morphologic similarity between the two species. The variety shows intimate similarity to *D. praedimorpha* var. *intermedia* and var. *minor*, in small valve size, lack of apical thickening of closed copula. Hence *D. dimorpha* var. *dimorpha* must have been derived from *D. praedimorpha* var. *minor* through *D. praedimorpha* var. *intermedia* by forming complete cross rods of closed copula.

The stratigraphic range of *D. dimorpha* var. *dimorpha* overlaps with that of *D. praedimorpha* in the Southern Ocean (BARRON, personal communication, 1988), whereas the range of these two taxa are seemingly separated by an interval representey by the *Thalassiosira yabei* Zone (NPD 5C) in the middle- to high-latitude North Pacific (Fig. 8). Moreover, the first occurrence of *D. dimorpha* var. *dimorpha* in the Southern Ocean is clearly older than that in the North Pacific. These occurrences suggest that *D. dimorpha* var. *dimorpha* established in the Southern Ocean and later migrated in the middle- to high-latitude of the northern Hemisphere. This is also supported by the fact that *D. praedimorpha* var. *intermedia*, a probable direct evolutionary precursor of *D. dimorpha* var. *dimorpha*, is geographically confined in the Southern Ocean and not distributed in the middle- to high-latitude of the Northern Hemisphere.

D. dimorpha var. dimorpha evolved into D. dimorpha var. areolata.

-255-





Fig. 24 Plot of width and length in copulae of *Denticulopsis dimorpha* var. *dimorpha*, D. *dimorpha* var. *areolata* and D. *ovata*. Sample DSDP Hole 266, 10-1, 80-83 cm. Numbers under large open triangles indicate figure numbers in plate 8 of SCHRADER (1976). 5 : holotype of *Denticula hustedtii* var. *ovata* SCHRADER, 1976; 6 : paratype of the same variety; 7 : holotype of *Denticula lauta* var. *ovata* SCHRADER, 1976.

Denticulopsis dimorpha var. areolata n. var.

Plate 4, Figs. 40, 41, 50-54; Plate 5, figs. 13-17; Plate 6, Figs. 1-5, 15-23; Plate 12, Figs. 15, 16.

Synonymy: *Denticula lauta* BAILEY, KOI-ZUMI. 1973, pl. 5, figs. 24, 25; KOIZUMI, 1975c, pl. 1, fig. 8; *Denticula dimorpha* SCHRADER, 1973a, pl. 1, fig. 45; AKIBA, 1979, pl. 1, figs. 2a-3, 5-8; BARRON, 1980, pl. 1, fig. 21; *Denticulopsis dimorpha* (SCHRADER) SIMONSEN, AKIBA, 1982, pl. 11, figs. 2-4, 7, 8; MARUYAMA, 1984a, pl. 18, fig. 34, pl. 20, fig. 4; BARRON, 1985b, p. 784, figs. 13.22, 13.23; AKIBA, 1986, pl. 27, figs. 1, 2, 5, 6, 10; AKIBA and YANAGISAWA, 1986, pl. 15, figs. 1, 5-16, 19, 21, 22, pl. 16, figs. 1-16.

Description: Valve linear-elliptical with bluntly rounded apices, $11-33 \,\mu m \log$, 5-8.5 μm wide. Valve face and mantle perforated by double-layered punctation. Outer fine puncta form transapical striae, 22-25 in 10 µm, rarely reduced. Inner coarse puncta form network of ramified thickenings. In Vc valve primary pseudosepta without basal ridges, 4-5 in $10 \,\mu m$. Secondary pseudosepta absent. Marginal ribs on both sides between each two primary pseudosepta. Raphe marginal. Copula closed with serrate edge (Ccr) or closed with smooth edge (Ccm), open with punctated sides (Cop). Closed copula has no or poorly developed apical thickenings. Some copulae from the Southern Ocean have partly or completely discontinuous cross rods (Pl. 6, Figs. 16, 18, 21). Other features are nearly the same as those of the nominative variety.

Holotype: Plate 4, Fig. 54; GSJ F12812 deposited in Geological Survey of Japan (Sample DSDP 438A, 56 cc, northwest Pacific).

Stratigraphic occurrence: This variety occurs in the uppermost part of the *D. dimorpha* Zone (NPD 5D) in the middle- to highlatitude North Pacific. The stratigraphic range is not well known at present in the Southern Ocean.

Geographic distribution : This variety is

distributed in the middle- to high-latitude North Pacific and the Southern Ocean, but not in the equatorial Pacific.

Remarks : *D. dimorpha* var. *areolata* differs from *D. dimorpha* var. *dimorpha* mainly by its double-layered punctation. It is larger than the latter variety (the var. *areolata* more than $5 \,\mu\text{m}$ in width, whereas the var. *dimorpha* less than $5 \,\mu\text{m}$ in width; Figs. 23, 24). *D. dimorpha* var. *areolata* resembles *D. ovata*, but is distinguished by equally spaced cross rods of closed copula, and by more slender outline (Fig. 24).

Phylogenetic relationship: It is certain that this variety evolved from *D. dimorpha* var. *dimorpha* because of the presence of transitional form and its stratigraphic range. This evolutionary change was accompanied by the development of double-layered punctation on the valve face and mantle. *D. dimorpha* var. *areolata* evolved into *D. ovata*.

Denticulopsis ovata (SCHRADER) n. comb. Plate 6, Figs. 6-14, 24-32

Basionym: *Denticula hustedtii* var. *ovata* SCHRADER, 1976, p. 632, pl. 4, figs. 5, 6, 12, 14, 15.

Synonymy: Denticula lauta var. ovata SCHRADER, 1976, p. 632, pl. 4, fig. 7; Denticula lauta BAILEY, SCHRADER, 1976, pl. 4, fig. 13; Denticula hustedtii (?) SIMONSEN and KANAYA, GOMBOS, 1976, pl. 8, fig. 5; Denticula cf. dimorpha SCHRADER, GOMBOS, 1976, pl. 8, figs. 9, 10; Denticulopsis hustedtii var. ovata (SCHRADER) SIMONSEN, 1979, p. 64; Denticulopsis lauta var. ovata (SCHRADER) SIMONSEN, 1979, p. 65; AKIBA, 1982, pl. 10, fig. 18.

Description: Frustule rectangular with rounded corners in girdle view. Valve robust, linear to oval with broadly rounded apices, 9-43 μ m long, 5.5-15 μ m wide. Transapical striae on valve face finely punctated 22-26 in 10 μ m, in quincunx arrangement, doublelayered in part near valve margin. Valve mantle perforated by double-layered punctation. Primary pseudosepta without basal ridges, 5-6.5 in 10 μ m. Secondary pseudosepta absent. Marginal ribs present on both sides between each two pseudosepta. Raphe marginal. Deck broad with small foramina. Copula open or closed. Closed copula robust, very thickly silicified, with servate edge (Ccr) or smooth edge (Ccm). Cross rods unequally spaced, with large and small foramina. At the large foramina, truncated pairs of inner extensions present. Distinct impressions which correspond to deck and pseudosepta of valve present at advalver side of closed copula (Pl. 6, Figs. 24, 26). Apical thickening absent or poorly developed. Open copula perforated on both sides by a row of puncta (Cop, Pl. 6, Fig. 14). When closed copula and valve are found combined, it seems as if the species had secondary pseudosepta (Pl. 6, Figs. 6, 10, 11, 13), because the primary pseudosepta which are not correspond to cross rod seem like secondary pseudosepta.

Stratigraphic occurrence: This species occurs from the middle part of the *Nitzschia denticuloides* Zone (NSD 6) to the lower part of the *D. lauta*-*D. hustedtii* Zone (NSD 7) in the Southern Ocean.

Geographic distribution : *D. ovata* is an endemic species in the Southern Ocean.

Remarks: *D. ovata* differs from *D. dimorpha* (varieties *dimorpha* and *areolata*) by its unequally spaced cross rods of closed copula and broader valve outline (Fig. 24). When its valve and closed copula are found combined (Pl. 5, Figs. 16, 19), the species has a very similar look to that of *D. crassa* (Pl. 3, Figs. 23, 24). However, the lack of suture lines between the basal ridge and the inner extensions of copula distinguish *D. ovata* from *D. crassa*.

Discussion: This taxon was described as a variety of *D. hustedtii* (SCHRADER, 1976) because of the presence of secondary pseudosepta. However, the "secondary pseudosepta" of this taxon is merely an optical illusion, as noted in the description. This taxon is, therefore, not a variety of *D. hustedtii*, but a distinct species close to *D. dimorpha*.

Denticula lauta var. ovata, another taxon

described by SCHRADER (1976) from the Southern Ocean, is a synonym of *D. ovata*, because the holotype specimen of *D. lauta* var. *ovata* is undoubtedly identical to the Vo valve of *D. ovata*.

Phylogenetic relationship: The ancestor of *D. ovata* must be a primitive form of *D. dimorpha* var. *areolata*. This presumption is based on the similarity in valve face punctation between the two taxa, both of which have partly developed double-layered punctation on valve face. *D. ovata* evolved in the Southern Ocean in the early Late Miocene, but did not migrate to the middle- to high-latitude of the Northern Hemisphere as its ancestors *D. dimorpha* var. *dimorpha* and var. *areolata* did. *D. ovata* became extinct without leaving any descendants.

VII. 3 Genus *Neodenticula* AKIBA et YANAGISAWA with its related species

Nitzschia rolandii SCHRADER Plate 7, Figs. 17-26

SCHRADER, 1973a, p. 708, pl. 5, figs. 31, 42 (?), pl. 26, figs. 3, 4; SCHRADER, 1974b, figs. 6-22, 6-24, 6-26, 6-27; BARRON, 1981a, pl. 4, fig. 18; ORESHKINA, 1985, pl. 1, figs. 14, 15; *Nitzschia rolandii* SCHRADER emend. HARPER, 1977, p. 89-90, pl. 3, figs. 9-11, pl. 5, figs. 5-7; *Nitzschia rolandii* SCHRADER emend. KOIZUMI, 1980, p. 396, pl. 2, figs. 15-20; AKIBA, 1986, pl. 25, figs. 1-6; AKIBA and YANAGISAWA, 1986, pl. 21, figs. 1-6; YANAGISAWA *et al.*, 1989, pl. 6, fig. 22.

Synonymy: Denticula seminae f. fossilis KOIZUMI, SCHRADER, 1973a, pl. 5, figs. 30, 37, 38; Denticula sp. cf. D. kamtschatica ZABELINA, BARRON, 1980, p. 672, pl. 1, figs. 15-17; Neodenticula kamtschatica (ZABELINA) AKIBA and YANAGISAWA, 1986, pl. 21, figs. 9-12, 20; Akiba, 1986, pl. 25, figs. 7-14.

Description: Valve linear to linear-elliptical with rounded apices, $10-47 \ \mu m \ \text{long}$, $2-5 \ \mu m$ wide. Primitive form sometimes asymmetric. Transapical costae branching at raphe-bearing margin, straight in the middle, becoming slightly curved and oblique to transapical axis toward apex. Transapical costae 11-15 in 10 μ m in primitive form, and 8.5-10.5 in 10 μ m in advanced form. Transapical striae very fine, not visible in ordinary LM observation. Raphe marginal with portulae between marginal branching of transapical costae.

Stratigraphic occurrence: The species occurs consistently from the middle part of the Late Miocene *Thalassionema schraderi* Zone (NPD 6B) to the middle part of the Early Pliocene *Neodenticula kamtschatica* Zone (NPD 7B). It also occurs very sporadically in the underlying Middle to Late Miocene interval, the oldest occurrence being in the uppermost part of the Middle Miocene *Denticulopsis praedimorpha* Zone (NPD 5B).

Geographic distribution: This species is an endemic diatom in the middle- to high-latitude North Pacific.

Remarks: The species shows a remarkable morphologic variation in both spacing of transapical costae and valve outline. In this paper, it is divided tentatively into the following three forms:

- (1) primitive asymmetric form (Pl. 7, Figs. 17-19)
- (2) primitive symmetric form (Pl. 7, Figs. 20-22)
- (3) advanced form (Pl. 7, Figs. 23-26)

The primitive asymmetric form is characterized by a narrower interval of transapical costae (11-15 in 10 μ m) and an asymmetric lanceolate valve outline. This form mainly occurs sporadically from the Middle Miocene *D. praedimorpha* Zone (NPD 5B) to the Late Miocene *Thalassionema schraderi* Zone (NPD 6B).

The primitive symmetric form has a linear symmetric outline and a narrower interval of costae (11-15 in 10 μ m), occurring from the middle part of the Late Miocene *T. schraderi* Zone (NPD 6B) to the middle part of the *Neodenticula kamtschatica* Zone (NPD 7B).

The advanced form is distinguished from

the primitive ones by a broader interval of costae (8.5-10.5 in 10 μ m), but this separation is not always easy (See Fig. 25). It occurs from the upper part of the *T. schraderi* Zone (NPD 6B) to the upper part of the *N. kamts-chatica* Zone (NPD 7B). The advanced form of *N. rolandii* shows very close affinity to *N. kamtschatica* as pointed out by previous authors (HARPER, 1977; KOIZUMI, 1980; BAR-RON, 1980; AKIBA and YANAGISAWA, 1986), but it differs from the latter species by a narrower spacing of transapical costae or pseudosepta (8.5-10.5 versus 5-8 in 10 μ m, Fig. 25).

Discussion: SCHRADER (1973a) originally gave about 10 for the number of transapical costae of *N. rolandii* per $10 \,\mu$ m. Later HARPER (1977) expanded the number to 7–10 and KOIZUMI (1980) emended it 10–12. Our biometric analysis shows that the number of transapical costae per $10 \,\mu$ m varies 8.5–14.5 (Fig. 25).

Phylogenetic relationship: This species is evidently the ancestor of the genus *Neodenticula*. It evolved into *Neodenticula kamtschatica* by widening of space between transapical costae or pseudosepta and an increase in size.

Neodenticula kamtschatica (ZABELINA) AKIBA et YANAGISAWA Plate 7, Figs. 27-37

AKIBA and YANAGISAWA, 1986, p. 490-491, pl. 21, figs. 7, 8, 13-19, 21, pl. 22, figs. 1-12; AKIBA, 1986, pl. 25, figs. 15-27; YANAGISAWA *et al.*, 1989, pl. 6, figs. 18-20.

Synonymy: Denticula kamtschatica ZABELINA, 1934, p. 16, figs. 7-9; SIMONSEN and KANAYA, 1961, p. 503, pl. 1, figs. 14-18; SHE-SHUKOVA-PORETSUKAYA, 1967, p. 300, pl. 47, figs. 9a, 9b, pl. 48, figs. 4a-4e; KOIZUMI, 1968, p. 213, pl. 34, figs. 7-10; KOIZUMI, 1972, pl. 42, figs. 12, 13; KOIZUMI, 1973, p. 832, pl. 5, figs. 14-17; SCHRADER, 1973a, p. 705, pl. 2, figs. 1-13; SCHRADER, 1973b, p. 418, pl. 1 figs. 7, 8; KOIZUMI, 1975a, pl. 1, figs. 13-20; KOIZUMI, 1975b, pl. 4, fig. 47; KOIZUMI, 1975c, pl. 1, fig.



Fig. 25 Frequency distribution of number of pseudosepta or transapical costae (per 10 μ m) in *Neodenticula kamtschatica* and *Nitzschia rolandii*. A : *N. kamtschatica*; B : *N. rolandii* (advanced form); C : *N. rolandii* (primitive form).

5; BARRON, 1976, pl. II, fig. 32; HARPER, 1977, p. 89, pl. 3, figs. 1-4, pl. 5, figs. 1-4, 8; DZINOR-IDZE et al., 1978, pl. 20, fig. 7; BARRON, 1980, p. 672, pl. 1, figs. 5-8; Denticula seminae var. fossilis SCHRADER, 1973 b, pl. 1, figs, 5, 6; Denticulopsis kamtschatica (ZABELINA) SIMON-SEN, 1979, p. 64; AKIBA et al., 1982, pl. 3, figs. 66-68; ORESHKINA, 1985, pl. 1, figs. 16-20; BARRON, 1985b, p. 784, fig. 13.16; Denticula kamtschatica ZABELINA emend. KOIZUMI, 1980, p. 396, pl. 2, figs. 1-10.

Description: Frustule rectangular with rounded corners in girdle view. Valve linear or linear-elliptical with sometimes protracted, broadly rounded apices, 9-35 µm long, 3-6.5 μ m wide. Transapical striae on valve face very finely punctated, about 42-44 in 10 μ m, not discernible in ordinary LM observation, visible only in oblique illumination (Pl. 7, Figs. 30, 37) or in SEM observation. Puncta arranged in clear quincunx. Valve mantle perforated by very fine puncta of the same density as those on valve face. Primary pseudosepta with more and less developed basal ridges, 5-8 in 10 μ m, branching at raphe-bearing margin. Secondary pseudosepta absent. Apical pseudosepta sometimes present only shortly just near apex. Marginal ribs formed by branching of pseudosepta at raphe-bearing margin, 9-10 in 10 μ m, absent at raphe-less margin. Raphe marginal with portula between marginal ribs. Raphe slit continuous, not interrupted at the middle. Copula open with smooth non-punctated sides. Pleurae open.

Stratigraphic occurrence: The species occurs commonly to abundantly from the *N. kamtschatica* Zone (NPD 7 B) to the *Neodenticula koizumii-N. kamtschatica* Zone (NPD 8). It first occurs near the base of the underlying *Rouxia californica* Zone (NPD 7A), but it is rare or sporadic until its sudden great increase at the base of the *N. kamtschatica* Zone. Its last occurrence defines the top of the *N. koizumii-N. kamtschatica* Zone. According to BURCKLE and OPDYKE (1985), the first occurrence of this species is diachronous; this species appeared earlier in the high-lati-

tudes than in the middle-latitudes.

Geographic distribution: *N. kamtschatica* is an endemic species in the middle- to highlatitude Northern Hemisphere, especially dominant in the high-latitude North Pacific. It occurs in the Norwegian Sea with rare abundance (DZINORIDZE *et al.*, 1978).

Remarks: The species is distinguished from *N. koizumii* by the absence of secondary pseudosepta. It closely resembles *Nitzschia rolandii* SCHRADER (advanced form) but differs by the broader spacing of pseudosepta or costae (5-8 versus 8.5-10.5 in $10 \ \mu$ m), the development of basal ridge, more frequent branching of pseudosepta on raphe side and the relatively wider valve.

Discussion : Various definitions have been made concerning the spacing of pseudosepta in this species. ZABELINA (1934) originally described 4-8 for the number of pseudosepta in 10 µm. Later SIMONSEN and KANAYA (1961) and Harper (1977) gave 5-6 for it. KOIZUMI (1980) expanded it to 5-8 again. In our previous paper (AKIBA and YANAGISAWA, 1986), we wrote that the number of pseudosepta in $10 \,\mu\text{m}$ varies from 5 to 10. However, frequency distributions in number of pseudosepta per 10 μ m for N. kamtschatica and Nitzschia rolandii overlap slightly but clearly differ, showing two distinct clusters separated by a gap around 8-8.5 (Fig. 25). KOIZUMI's (1980) definition for N. kamtschatica (5-8 pseudosepta in 10 μ m) therefore is the most appropriate.

Phylogenetic relationship: Morphologic similarities and stratigraphic ranges indicate without doubt that *N. kamtschatica* evolved directly from *Nitzschia rolandii* through widening of the spacing of pseudosepta, an increase in size, further branching of pseudosepta and development of basal ridges (HARPER, 1977; AKIBA and YANAGISAWA, 1986). *N. kamtschatica* developed into *N. koizumii* by forming secondary pseudosepta.

-261-

Neodenticula koizumii AKIBA et YANAGISAWA Plate 7, Figs. 38-41, (42-44)

AKIBA and YANAGISAWA, 1986, p. 491, pl. 21, figs. 22-28, pl. 23, figs. 1-12, pl. 24, fig. 19; YANAGISAWA *et al.*, 1989, pl. 6, fig. 17.

Synonymy: *Denticula seminae* SIMONSEN et KANAYA, KOIZUMI, 1972, p. 350, pl. 42, figs. 5a-6; KOIZUMI, 1973, p. 832, in part, pl. 5, figs. 7-9, 10-13, non pl. 5, figs. 1-6; SCHRADER, 1973a, pl. 1, figs. 7-11, non pl. 1, figs. 1-8, 36, 47; Denticula seminae var. fossilis SCHRADER, KOIZUMI, 1975a, p. 802, pl. 1, figs. 4-12; KO-IZUMI, 1975b, pl. 4, figs. 44-46; KOIZUMI, 1975c, pl. 1, figs. 3, 4; HARPER, 1977, pl. 3, fig. 5; AKIBA, 1979, pl. 3, fig. 7; BARRON, 1980, pl. 1, figs. 2-4; Denticulopsis seminae var. fossilis (Schrader) Simonsen, Barron, 1985b, p. 785, fig. 13.15; Denticulopsis seminae (SIMONSEN et KANAYA) SIMONSEN, ORESHKINA, 1985, pl. 1, figs. 21-23; Neodenticula sp. A, AKIBA and YANAGISAWA, 1986, p. 492, pl. 21, figs. 29-31, pl. 24, figs. 12-18, pl. 25, figs. 1-6; YANAGI-SAWA et al., 1989, pl. 6, figs. 15, 16; non Denticula seminae f. fossilis KOIZUMI ex SCHRADER, 1973a, p. 705, pl. 5, figs. 30, 37, 38; non Denticula seminae var. fossilis SCHRADER, 1973b, p. 420, pl. 1, figs 5, 6.

Description: Frustule rectangular with rounded corners. Valve linear to linear-elliptical with bluntly rounded apices, $10-42 \,\mu m$ long, $3-6\,\mu m$ wide. Transapical striae on valve face very finely punctated, 42-44 in 10 μ m, arranged in quincunx, not discernible in ordinary LM observation, visible only in oblique illumination or SEM observation. Valve mantle low, perforated by very fine puncta of the same density as those on valve face. Pseudosepta (primary or secondary) straight throughout valve face, spaced equally, 6-7 in 10 μ m. Secondary pseudosepta 1-3 between each two primary pseudosepta. Pseudosepta branching to form marginal ribs at raphe-bearing margin. No marginal ribs present at raphe-less margin. Raphe marginal with continuous raphe slit. Portula between each two marginal ribs. Copula open with smooth non-punctated sides.

Stratigraphic occurrence: The species is common to abundant in the interval from the base of the *N. koizumii*–*N. kamtschatica* Zone (NPD 8) through the overlying *N. koizumii* Zone (NPD 9). KOIZUMI and TANIMURA (1985) indicated that the first occurrence of this species is slightly diachronous in the North Pacific.

Geographic distribution: The species is distributed only in the middle- to high-latitude Northern Hemisphere, especially dominant in the high-latitude North Pacific.

Remarks: This species is similar to N. kamtschatica, but is easily distinguishable from the latter by the presence of secondary pseudosepta. It differs from Neodenticula seminae mainly by the absence of closed copula and more slender valve outline. The valve of N. koizumii is distinguished from that of N. *seminae* in that pseudosepta near apex are not so curved but nearly parallel to transapical axis and that branchings of pseudosepta at raphe side are very conspicuous. The two species are also differ in punctation on the valve face: N. koizumii has full punctation whereas N. seminae has reduced punctation (AKIBA and YANAGISAWA, 1986, pl. 23, fig. 4; pl. 26, fig. 5).

N. koizumii is similar to *Denticulopsis* simonsenii group (Compare Pl. 7, Fig. 38 and Pl. 3, Fig. 1), but differs by the absence of marginal ribs at raphe-less margin and very fine puncta that are not visible in ordinary LM observation.

Discussion: Neodenticula sp. A of AKIBA and YANAGISAWA (1986) (Pl. 7, Figs. 42-44) is tentatively included in N. koizumii in this paper, because N. sp. A has an open copula as N. koizumii does (N. seminae has a closed copula). However, the reduced punctation on valve face of N. sp. A shows that it bears more intimate resemblance to N. seminae as described by AKIBA and YANAGISAWA (1986). Thus it is apparent that N. sp. A is an intermediate form between N. koizumii and N. *seminae*. The formal description of this form will be made after its precise stratigraphic range is well investigated.

Further taxonomic problems of *N. koizumii* are discussed in detail in AKIBA and YANAGI-SAWA (1986).

Phylogenetic relationship: N. koizumii evolved from N. kamtschatica with development of secondary pseudosepta and gave rise to N. seminae via N. sp. A.

Neodenticula seminae (SIMONSEN et KANAYA) AKIBA et YANAGISAWA Plate 7, Figs. 45-49

AKIBA and YANAGISAWA, 1986, p. 491-492, pl. 24, figs. 1-11, pl. 26, figs. 1-10; AKIBA, 1986, pl. 25, figs. 28-32.

Synonymy : Denticula marina SEMINA, 1956, p. 82, figs. 1-2b; Denticula seminae SIMONSEN et KANAYA, 1961, p. 503, pl. 1 figs. 26-30; SHESHUKOVA-PORETSUKAYA, 1967, p. 301-302, pl. 47, figs. 11a-11c; HASLE, 1972, fig. 3, 4, 8; SCHRADER, 1973a, p. 705, pl. 1, figs. 1-6, 36, 47; 1973b, p. 420, pl. 1, figs. 1-4; KOIZUMI, 1973, p. 832, pl. 5, figs. 1-6; KOIZUMI, 1975a, p. 802, pl. 1, figs. 1-3; KOIZUMI, 1975c, pl. 1, figs. 1,2; DZINORIDZE et al., 1978, pl. 20, figs. 5, 6; BAR-RON, 1980, pl. 1, fig. 1; Denticulopsis seminae (SIMONSEN et KANAYA) SIMONSEN, 1979, p. 65; SEMINA, 1981, p. 180-182, pl. 1, figs. 1-4, pl. 2, figs. 5-9, pl. 3, figs. 10-14; SANCETTA, 1982, p. 230-231, pl. 3, figs. 1-3; ORESHKINA, 1985, pl. 1, figs. 24-28.

Description: Frustule rectangular with rounded corners. Valve linear to linear-elliptical with sometimes protracted bluntly rounded apices, 10-60 μ m long, 4-9 μ m wide. Transapical striae on valve face very finely punctated, not discernible in ordinary LM observation, only visible in oblique illumination or SEM observation. Some transapical striae near pseudosepta reduced so that only one to three striae remain on valve face between pseudosepta. Valve mantle low, perforated by very fine puncta without reduction of puncta. Pseudosepta (primary or secondary) equally spaced, 7-9 in 10 μ m, with 2-6 secondary pseudosepta between primary pseudosepta, or between primary pseudosepta and apex. Pseudosepta branching at raphebearing margin so that fork-like structure formed. Pseudosepta straight in the middle part of valve, becoming gradually curved toward apex. Marginal ribs formed by branching of pseudosepta at raphe-bearing margin, but absent at the other margin. Raphe marginal with each portula between each two marginal ribs. Raphe slit continuous. Copula closed with smooth non-punctated sides.

Stratigraphic occurrence: The species is common to abundant in the Quaternary to the Recent. The first occurrence of this species is in the upper part of the *N. koizumii* Zone (NPD 9).

Geographic distribution : The species is mainly and dominantly distributed in the middle- to high-latitude North Pacific. SAN-CETTA (1982) found this species to be very abundant in the northeast Pacific and a good tracer of water of the Alaskan Stream. She also showed that the species is lower in abundance in the northwest Pacific than in the northeast Pacific. The species is rarely found in the Norwegian Sea (DZINORIDZE et. al., 1978 ; BALDAUF, 1987). KANAYA and KOIZUMI (1966) regarded the species as the most representative cold water species in the North Pacific. HASLE (1976) stressed that this species was not reported from other part of the world oceans. However, SEMINA (1981) found N. seminae living, though very rarely, in the low-latitude areas (the tropical Pacific, Indian and Atlantic Oceans), and consequently she classified this species as a tropical-boreal species in all three Oceans.

Remarks: The species differs from *N. ko-izumii* by the presence of closed copula and broader valve outline. It also differs from the latter in having curved pseudosepta near apex, lacking conspicuous branching of pseudosepta at raphe side margin and larger number of secondary pseudosepta between primary pseudosepta.

N. seminae is very similar to N. sp. A of AKIBA and YANAGISAWA (1986) but differs from the latter by more linear valve outline and the presence of closed copula.

Discussion: HASLE (1972) observed an open copula of this species (HASLE, 1972, fig. 4). Some specimens might possess open copulae, although we could not find this type of copula in this study.

Phylogenetic relationship: *N. seminae* evolved from *N. koizumii* and remains extant.

VII. 4 Other species

"Denticula" norwegica SCHRADER in SCHRADER et FENNER Plate 1, Fig. 40; Plate 8, Fig. 18

Denticula norwegica SCHRADER and FENNER, 1976, p. 978, pl. 1, fig. 38; AKIBA and YANAGI-SAWA, 1986, p. 487, pl. 2, figs. 15-21, pl. 6, figs. 1-9.

Synonymy: Denticula punctata SCHRADER, 1973a, pl. 3, figs. 16, 17; Denticulopsis norvegica (SCHRADER) SIMONSEN, 1979, p. 65; MARUYAMA, 1984a, pl. 16, fig. 13; Denticulopsis norwegica SCHRADER, POWERS, 1988, pl. 5, fig. 8.

Description : Valve lanceolate with acutely rounded apices, 35-64 μ m long, 6-15 μ m wide in the middle of valve. Transapical striae on valve face coarsely punctated, 12-18 in $10 \ \mu m$, not arranged in quincunx; puncta, 10-16 in 10 μ m, oval, elongated in transapical direction, occluded by mesh-like cribra. Valve mantle low, perforated by two longitudinal rows of coarse puncta. Primary pseudosepta with unclear basal ridges, unequally spaced, 3-5 in $10 \,\mu m$. Secondary pseudosepta rarely present between primary pseudosepta. Marginal ribs numerous but inconspicuous. Raphe marginal with interrupted raphe slit. Portula, 7-8 in 10 μm or two between primary pseudosepta. Central portula larger and apically elongated.

Stratigraphic occurrence: This species rarely occurs in the *C. kanayae* Zone (NPD 3A) and *D. praelauta* Zone (NPD 3B) in the middle

- to high-latitude North Pacific. SCHRADER and FENNER (1976) reported this species from the *Denticula nicobarica* Zone of their diatom zonation at DSDP Site 338 in the Norwegian Sea.

Geographic distribution: The species is found in the Norwegian Sea and the middleto high-latitude North Pacific, and also in the low-latitude Pacific.

Discussion: SIMONSEN (1979) transferred this species to the genus *Denticulopsis* SIMON-SEN. However, it cannot surely be assigned in the genera *Crucidenticula, Denticulopsis* nor *Neodenticula*, because the valve structure of this species is fundamentally different from those of the three genera; This species has peculiar oval areolae with mesh-like cribra (Pl. 8, Fig. 18), which is unique to this species and never present in any species of *Crucidenticula, Denticulopsis* nor *Neodenticula* (AKIBA and YANAGISAWA, 1986). "Denticula" *norwegica* probably has no phylogenetic relationship to these three genera.

"Denticulopsis" maccollumii SIMONSEN Plate 2, Figs. 39-41

Denticulopsis maccollumii SIMONSEN, 1979, p. 65; BARRON, 1985b, p. 785, figs. 14.10, 14.11.

Synonym : *Denticula antarctica* MCCOL-LUM, 1975, p. 527, pl. 8, figs. 6-10; SCHRADER, 1976, p. 631, pl. 4, figs. 3, 22, 23, 25; DEFELICE and MILLER, 1978, p. 115, figs. 1-8.

Description : Valve weakly silicified, elliptical to linear-elliptical with broadly rounded apices, 14-60 μ m long, 4-8 μ m wide. Primary pseudosepta ca. 6 in 10 μ m with marginal ribs on both sides between pseudosepta. Secondary pseudosepta absent. On valve face, lanceolate hyaline central area present. On both sides double rows of pores present, one row on valve face and the other on mantle. The pores 4-8 in 10 μ m, one or two between pseudosepta. Raphe marginal between the double rows of pores. Copula open with non-punctate sides.

Stratigraphic occurrence: The species occurs from the uppermost part of the *Nitzs*-

chia maleinterpretaria Zone (NSD 3) to the upper part of the *N. denticuloides* Zone (NSD 6) in the Southern Ocean.

Geographic distribution : "Denticulopsis" maccollumii is an endemic diatom in the Southern Ocean.

Remarks: The species is very similar to *Denticulopsis hyalina* in valve view (SCHRADER, 1976), but differs by the valve mantle structure. *D. hyalina* has double-layered punctation in the valve mantle, whereas "*Denticulopsis*" maccollumii has a row of large pores in the valve mantle.

Discussion: This species has probably no phylogenetic relationship to the genera *Denticulopsis, Crucidenticula* nor *Neodenticula*, because of the fundamental difference in the valve mantle structure. The species is rather similar to *Nitzschia denticuloides* SCHRADER (Pl. 2, Figs. 42, 43), as suggested by DEFELICE and MILLER (1978).

Acknowledgments: We are grateful to John A. BARRON and Akira NISHIMURA for their kind and careful reviews of the manuscript and to Taro KANAYA, Itaru KOIZUMI, Yoshihiro TANIMURA and Toshiaki MARU-YAMA for their helpful and valuable suggestions on taxonomic problems. We also thank to Yokichi TAKAYANAGI, Kazuhiro KOBA-YASHI, Toshiaki MARUYAMA, and Yoshihiro TANIMURA who kindly offered us the chance to examine DSDP Site 438 A materials. We are very thankful to John A. BARRON who kindly sent us slides and materials of the DSDP Holes 438A, 438B, 71, 77B and 266, and also thank Reimer SIMONSEN for taking photographs of the holotype specimen of *Denticulop*sis hustedtii. We are grateful to Andrew M. GOMBOS Jr. for sending us a slide and a sample of "Denticulopsis" maccollumii. Further appreciation is due to Shigeki MAYAMA for helpful suggestion about the initial valves of pennate diatoms, and to Taro KANAYA, Hideaki TAKANO, Akira NISHIMURA, Konosuke SAWAMURA, Koichi NAKAMURA, Itaru KOIZUMI, Iwao KOBAYASHI, Tsutomu TANA- KA, Takemasa ISHII and Shoichi YAMAGUCHI who gave us their samples or helped us to use them.

References

- ABBOTT, W. H. (1980) Diatoms and stratigraphically significant silicoflagellates from the Atlantic Margin Coring Project and other Atlantic margin sites. *Micropaleont.*, vol. 26, p. 49-80.
- (1984) Progress in the recognition of Neogene diatom datums along the U. S. Atlantic coast. *Palaeogeogr.*, *Palaeoclimatol.*, *Palaeoecol.*, vol. 47, p. 5-20.
- and ERNISSEE, J. J. (1983) Biostratigraphy and paleoecology of a diatomaceous clay unit in the Miocene Pungo River Formation of Beaufort County, North Carolina. In RAY, C. E. ed., Geology and paleontology of the Lee Creek Mine, North Carolina, I. Smithsonian Contributions to Paleobiol., no. 53, p. 287-353.
- AKIBA, F. (1975) Diatom biostratigraphic correlation of the Neogene sequences between the Sorachi-Hidaka and Tenpoku areas in Hokkaido, Japan. Bull: Tech. Lab. Japan Petroleum Exploration Company, vol. 18, p. 197-236 (in Japanese).

(1979) The morphologies of Denticula dimorpha and its related species, and the Neogene diatom biostratigraphy in Japan. Bull. Tech. Lab. Japan Petroleum Exploration Company, vol. 22, p. 148-189 (in Japanese).

(1982) Late Quaternary diatom

-265-

biostratigraphy of the Bellingshausen Sea, Antarctic Ocean. *Rep. Tech. Res. Center, Japan National Oil Corporation, Tokyo, Japan*, vol. 16, p. 31-74.

- AKIBA, F. (1985) Fossil diatom assemblage from the Lower Miocene Kamenoo Formation of the Joban Coalfield, Japan, and reversion of the so-called *Kisseleviella carina* Zone and the *Thalassiosira fraga* Zone. Abstracts 6 th Annual Meeting Japanese Soc. Diatomology, p. 18 (Abstract).
- (1986) Middle Miocene to Quaternary diatom biostratigraphy in the Nankai Trough and Japan Trench, and modified Lower Miocene through Quaternary diatom zones for middle-to-high latitudes of the North Pacific. *In* KAGAMI, H., KARIG, D. E., COULBOURN, W. T. *et al.*, *Init. Rep. DSDP.*, U. S. Government Printing Office, Washington, vol. 87, p. 393-481.
- and ICHINOSEKI, T. (1983) The Neogene micro- and chronostratigraphies in Hokkaido —Special reference to those of the southwestern part of the Kushiro Coal Field area, eastern Hokkaido, Japan—. Jour. Japanese Assoc. Petroleum Technologists, vol. 48, p. 49-61 (in Japanese with English abstract).
 - and YANAGISAWA Y. (1986) Taxonomy, morphology and phylogeny of the Neogene diatom zonal maker species in the middle-to-high latitudes of the North Pacific. *In* KAGAMI, H., KARIG, D. E., COULBO-URN, W. T. *et al.*, *Init. Rep. DSDP.*, U. S. Government Printing Office, Washington, vol. 87, p. 483-554.
- ANDREWS, G. W. (1978) Marine diatom sequence in Miocene strata of the Chesapeake Bay region, Maryland. *Micropaleont.*, vol. 24, p. 371-406.

- ANONYMOUS (1975) Proposals for a standardization of diatom terminology and diagnoses. *Beih. Nova Hedwigia*, vol. 53, p. 323-354.
- BAILEY, J. W. (1854) Notes on new American species and localities of microscopic organisms. I. Fossil marine Diatomaceae in California. *Smithsonian Contribution Knowl.*, vol. 7(Art. 3), p. 1– 16.
- BALDAUF, J. G. (1987) Diatom biostratigraphy of the middle- and high-latitude
 North Atlantic Ocean, Deep Sea
 Drilling Project Leg 94. In RUDDIMAN, W. F., KIDD, R. B., THOMAS, E. et al., Init. Rep. DSDP., U. S. Government Printing Office, Washington, vol. 94, p. 729-762.
- BARRON, J. A. (1973) Late Miocene-Early Pliocene Paleotemperatures for California from marine diatom evidence. Palaeogeogr. Palaeoclimatol. Palaeoecol. vol. 14, p. 277-291.
 - ——— (1975) Late Miocene-Early Pliocene marine diatoms from southern California. *Palaeontographica* Abt. B, vol. 151, p. 97-170.
 - (1976) Revised Miocene and Pliocene diatom biostratigraphy of upper Newport Bay, Newport Beach, California. *Marine Micropaleont.*, vol. 1, p. 27-63.
 - (1980) Lower Miocene to Quaternary diatom biostratigraphy of Leg 57, off northeastern Japan, Deep Sea Drilling Project. *In Scientific Party, Init. Rep. DSDP.*, U. S. Government Printing Office, vol. 56, 57, p. 641–685.
 - (1981a) Late Cenozoic diatom biostratigraphy and paleoceanography of the middle-latitude eastern North Pacific, Deep Sea Drilling Project Leg 63. *In* YEATS, R. S., HAQ, B. U. *et al.*, *Init. Rep. DSDP.*, U. S. Government Printing Office, vol. 63, p. 507-583.
 - (1981b) Middle Miocene diatom biostratigraphy of DSDP Site 77 B in the eastern equatorial Pacific. *Geo-science Jour.*, vol. 2, p. 137-144.
 - (1983) Latest Oligocene through early Middle Miocene diatom biostratigraphy of the eastern tropical

Pacific. *Marine Micropaleont.*, vol. 7, p. 487-515.

- BARRON, J. A. (1985a) Late Eocene to Holocene diatom biostratigraphy of the equatorial Pacific Ocean, Deep Sea Drilling Project Leg 85. In MAYER, L., THEYER, F. et al., Init. Rep. DSDP., U. S. Government Printing Office, vol. 85, p. 413-456.
 - (1985b) Miocene to Holocene planktic diatoms. In BOLLI, H. M., SAUNDERS, J. B. and PERCH-NIELSEN K. eds., Plankton Stratigraphy, Cambridge Univ. Press, Cambridge, p. 763-809.
 - (1986) Response of equatorial Pacific diatoms to polar cooling during the middle Miocene. In RICARD, M. ed., Proc. 8th International Diatom Symp., Koeltz Scientific Books, Koenigstein (West Germany), p. 591-600.
 - and KELLER, G. (1983) Paleotemperature oscillations in the Middle and Late Miocene of the northeastern Pacific. *Micropaleont.*, vol. 29, p. 150-181.
 - —, —— and DUNN, D. A. (1985) A multiple microfossil biochronology for the Miocene. *Geol. Soc. America Memoir*, no. 163, p. 21-36.
- BURCKLE, L. H. (1972) Late Cenozoic planktonic diatom zones from the eastern equatorial Pacific. *Beih. Nova Hedwigia*, vol. 30, p. 217-249.
- CIESIELSKI, P. F. (1983) The Neogene and Quaternary diatom biostratigraphy of subantarctic sediments, Deep Sea Drilling Project Leg 71. *In* LUDWIG, W. J., KRASHENINNIKOV, V. A. *et al.*, *Init. Rep. DSDP.*, U. S. Government Printing Office, Washington, vol. 71, p. 635-665.
- DEFELICE, D. R. and MILLER, W, III (1978) Structure of the Middle Miocene antarctic diatom species *Denticula antarctica* McCollum. *Antarctic Jour. United States*, vol. 13, p. 115.

- DZINORIDZE, R. N., JOUSÉ, A. P., KOROLEVA-GOLIKOVA, G. S., KOZLOVA, G. E., NAGAEVA, G. S., PETRUSHEVSKAYA, M. G. and STRELNIKOVA, N. I. (1978) Diatom and radiolarian Cenozoic stratigraphy, Norwegian Basin; DSDP Leg 38. In TALWANI, M., UDINTSEV, G. et al., Init. Rep. DSDP., U. S. Government Printing Office, Washington, Supplement to volumes 38, 39, 40, and 41, p. 289-427.
- FENNER, J. (1978) Cenozoic diatom biostratigraphy of the equatorial and southern Atlantic Ocean. In SUPKO, P. R., PERCH-NIELSEN, K. et al., Init. Rep. DSDP., U. S. Government Printing Office, Washington, Supplement to volumes 38, 39, 40 and 41, p. 491-624.
- GOMBOS, A. M. Jr. (1975) Fossil diatoms from Leg 7, Deep Sea Drilling Project. *Micropaleont.*, vol. 21, p. 306-333.
 - (1976) Paleogene and Neogene diatoms from the Forkland Plateau and Malvinas Outer Basin : Leg 36, Deep Sea Drilling Project. In BAR-KER, P. F., DALZIEL, I. W. D. et al., Init. Rep. DSDP., U. S. Government Printing Office, Washington, vol. 36, p. 575-687.
- GOTOH, T. (1984) On the siliceous structure of the septum and related forms in diatoms. *Japanese Jour. Phycol.* (*Sôrui*), vol. 32, p. 109-112.
- GRUNOW, A. (1868) Algae. Reise der osterreichen Fregatti Novara um die Erde in den Jahren 1857, 1858, 1859, *Botan.* vol. 1, p. 1-104.
- HAJÓS, M. (1968) Die Diatomeen der Miozänen Ablagerungen des Mátravorlandes. *Geologica Hungarica, Ser. Palaeont.*, vol. 37, p. 31-401.
 - (1973) The Mediterranean diatoms.
 In RYAN, W. B. F., HSÜ, K. J. et al.,
 Init. Rep. DSDP., U. S. Government
 Printing Office, Washington, vol. 13,
 p. 944-969.
 - (1986) Stratigraphy of Hungary's Miocene diatomaceous earth deposits. *Geologica Hungarica, Ser. Palaeont.*, vol. 49, p. 1-339.
- HARPER, H. E., Jr. (1977) Diatom biostratigraphy. In UJIIE, H. et al., Biostrati-

-267 -

Bulletin of the Geological Survey of Japan, Vol. 41, No. 5

graphy, paleomagnetism and sedimentology of late Cenozoic sediments in northwestern Hokkaido, Japan. Bull. National Sci. Museum, Tokyo, Japan, Ser. C (Geol. and Paleont.), vol. 3, p. 49-102.

- HASLE, G. R. (1972) *Fragilariopsis* Hustedt as a section of the genus *Nitzschia* Hassall. *Beih. Nova Hedwigia*, vol. 39, p. 111-119.
 - (1976) The biogeography of some marine planktonic diatoms. *Deep-sea Research*, vol. 23, p. 319-338.
- HATA, M. and HASEGAWA, Y. (1970) Tertiary geology and diatom flora at southern area of the Okushiri Island off Hokkaido, Japan. *Earth Science* (*Chikyu Kagaku*), vol. 24, p. 93-103 (in Japanese with English abstract).
- ITO, Y. (1986) Diatom biostratigraphy of the Neogene system in the Hokuriku Province, central Japan. News of Osaka Micropaleontologists, no. 14, p. 1-27 (in Japanese with English abstract).
- KANAYA, T. (1959) Miocene diatom assemblages from the Onnagawa Formation and their distribution in the correlative formations in northeast Japan. Sci. Rep. Tohoku Univ., 2nd ser. (Geol.), vol. 30, p. 1-130.
- (1971) Some aspects of pre-Quaternary diatoms in the oceans. In FUN-NELL, B. M. and RIEDEL, W. R., eds., The Micropalaeontology of Oceans, Cambridge Univ. Press, London, p. 545-565.
 - and KOIZUMI, I. (1966) Interpretation of diatom thanatocoenoses from the North Pacific applied to a study of core V20-130 (Studies of a deepsea core V20-130, part IV), *Sci. Rep. Tohoku Univ., 2nd ser. (Geol.)*, vol. 37, p. 89-130.
- KOIZUMI, I. (1968) Tertiary diatom flora of Oga Peninsula, Akita Prefecture, northeast Japan. Sci. Rep. Tohoku Univ., 2nd ser. (Geol.), vol. 40, p. 171-240.
- (1972) Marine diatom flora of the Pliocene Tatsunokuchi Formation in Fukushima Prefecture. *Trans. Proc. Palaeont. Soc. Japan, New. Ser.*, no.

86, p. 340-359.

- (1973) The late Cenozoic diatoms of Sites 183-193, Leg 19 Deep Sea Drilling Project. In CREAGER, J. S., SCHOLL, D. W. et al., Init. Rep. DSDP., U. S. Government Printing Office, Washington, vol. 19, p. 805-855.
- (1975a) Neogene diatoms from the western margin of the Pacific Ocean, Leg 31, Deep Sea Drilling Project. In KARIG, D. E., INGLE, J. C. Jr. et al., Init. Rep. DSDP., U. S. Government Printing Office, Washington, vol. 31, p. 779-819.
- (1975b) Neogene diatoms from the northwestern Pacific Ocean, Deep Sea Drilling Project. In LARSON, R. L., MOBERLY, R. et al., Init. Rep. DSDP., U. S. Government Printing Office, Washington, vol. 32, p. 865-889.
- ——— (1975c) Late Cenozoic diatom biostratigraphy in the circum-North Pacific region. *Jour. Geol. Soc. Japan*, vol. 81, p. 611-627.
- (1980) Neogene diatoms from the Emperor Seamount Chain, Leg 55, Deep Sea Drilling Project. In JACK-SON, E. D., KOIZUMI, I. et al., Init. Rep. DSDP., U. S. Government Printing Office, Washington, vol. 55, p. 387-407.
- (1985) Diatom biochronology for late Cenozoic Northwest Pacific. Jour. Geol. Soc. Japan, vol. 91, p. 195-211.
- and TANIMURA, Y. (1985) Neogene diatom biostratigraphy of the middle latitude western North Pacific, Deep Sea Drilling Project Leg 86. *In* HEATH, G. R., BURCKLE, L. H. *et al.*, *Init. Rep. DSDP.*, U. S. Government Printing Office, Washington, vol. 86, p. 269-300.
- KOMURA, S. (1976) Sawamuraia, Katahiraia und Yoshidaia, drei neue Diatomgattungen aus dem Neogen Japans. Trans. Proc. Palaeont. Soc. Japan, New Ser., no. 103, p. 379-397.
- LEE, Y. G. (1986) Micropaleontological study of Neogene strata of southeastern Korea and adjacent sea floor. *Jour.*
Paleont. Soc. Korea, vol. 2, p. 83-113. MARUYAMA, T. (1984a) Miocene diatom

- biostratigraphy of onshore sequences on the Pacific side of northeast Japan, with reference to DSDP Hole 438A (Part 1). *Sci. Rep. Tohoku Univ., 2nd ser.* (*Geol.*), vol. 54, p. 141-164.
 - (1984b) Miocene diatom biostratigraphy of onshore sequences on the Pacific side of northeast Japan, with reference to DSDP Hole 438A (Part 2). Sci. Rep. Tohoku Univ., 2nd ser. (Geol.), vol. 55, p. 77-140.
 - (1988) Morphological analysis of the fossil diatom *Denticulopsis lauta* on the basis of biometry-Recognition of species by size and shape. *Fossil* (*Palaeont. Soc. Japan*), no. 44, p. 33-43 (in Japanese with English abstract).
- MCCOLLUM, D. W. (1975) Diatom stratigraphy of the Southern Ocean. In HAYES, D. E., FRAKES, L. A. et al., Init. Rep. DSDP., U. S. Government Printing Office, Washington, vol. 28, p. 515-571.
- MILLER, K. G., FAIRBANKS, R. G. and MOUN-TAIN, G. S. (1987) Tertiary oxygen isotope synthesis, sea level history, and continental margin erosion. *Paleoceanogr.*, vol. 2, p. 1-19.
- MONJANEL, A.-L. (1987) Oligocene to Holocene diatoms from the North Atlantic and the Western Mediterranean: biostratigraphy and paleoceanography. Dr. Thesis, 320 p.
- ODA, M. (1986) Some aspects and problems concerned with microfossil biochronology for the Neogene in central and northeast Honshu, Japan. In NAKAGAWA, H., KOTAKA, T. and TAKAYANAGI, Y. eds., Essay of Geology, Professor Nobu Kitamura Commemorative Volume, Professor Nobu Kitamura Taikan Kinenjigyo-kai, Sendai (Japan), p. 297-312 (in Japanese with English abstract).
- OKUNO, H. (1964) Fossil diatoms. Diatomeenschalen im Elektronenmikroskopischen, J. Cramer, Weinheim, vol. 5, p. 1-48, pls. 414-512.
- ORESHKINA, T. V. (1985) Diatom assemblages and stratigraphy of the upper

Cenozoic along Kamtshatka region of the Pacific Ocean. *Izvestiya Academii Nauk SSSR, Seriya Geologicheskaya*, 1985, no. 5, p. 60-73 (in Russian).

- and RADIONOVA, E. P. (1987) Correlation of diatom zonal standard of the Miocene equatorial-tropical and the middle latitude of the Pacific Ocean. *Izvestiya Academii Nauk SSSR, Seriya Geologicheskaya*, 1987, no. 2, p. 59-72 (in Russian).
- POWERS, E. R. (1988) Diatom biostratigraphy and paleoecology of the Miocene Pungo River Formation, Onslow Bay, North Carolina continental shelf. Cushman Foundation for Foraminiferal Research, Special Pub., no. 25, p. 97-161.
- Ross, R., Cox, E. J., KARAYAVA, N. I., MANN, D. G., PADDOCK, T. B. B., SIMONSEN, R. and SIMS, P. A. (1979) An amended terminology for the siliceous components of the diatom cell. *Beih. Nova Hedwigia*, vol. 64, p. 513-533.
- SANCETTA, C. (1978) Neogene Pacific microfossils and paleoceanography. *Marine Micropaleont.*, vol. 3, p. 347-376.

— (1982) Distribution of diatom species in surface sediments of the Bering and Okhotsk Seas. *Micropaleont.*, vol. 28, p. 221-257.

- SCHRADER, H.-J. (1973a) Cenozoic diatoms from the Northeast Pacific, Leg 18. In KULM, L. D., Von HUENE, R. et al., Init. Rep. DSDP., U. S. Government Printing Office, Washington, vol. 18, p. 673-797.
- (1973b) Stratigraphic distribution of marine species of the diatom *Denticula* in Neogene North Pacific sediments. *Micropaleont.*, vol. 19, p. 417-430.

 (1974a) Cenozoic marine planktonic diatom stratigraphy of the tropical Indian Ocean. In FISHER, R. L., BUNCE, E. T. et al., Init. Rep. DSDP., U. S. Government Printing Office, Washington, vol. 24, p. 887-967.

(1974b) Revised diatom stratigraphy of the Experimental Mohole Drilling, Guadalupe Site. Proc.

-269-

Bulletin of the Geological Survey of Japan, Vol. 41, No. 5

California Acad. Sci., Fourth Ser., vol. 39, p. 517-562.

- (1976) Cenozoic planktonic diatom stratigraphy of the Southern Pacific Ocean. In HOLLISTER, C. D., CRAD-DOCK, C. et al., Init. Rep. DSDP., U.
 S. Government Printing Office, Washington, vol. 35, p. 605-671.
- and FENNER, J. (1976) Norwegian Sea Cenozoic diatom biostratigraphy and taxonomy. *In* TALWANI, M., UDINTSEV, G. *et al.*, *Init. Rep. DSDP.*, U. S. Government Printing Office, Washington, vol. 38, p. 921-1099.
- SEMINA, H. J. (1956) A new species of genus Denticula KTZ. Botanical Contributions, Komarov Botanical Inst., USSR Acad. Sci., Division of Spore Plants, vol. 11, p. 82-84 (in Russian).
- (1981) Morphology and distribution of a tropical *Denticulopsis*. In Ross, R. ed., Proc. Sixth Symp. Recent and Fossil Diatoms, Otto Koeltz Sci. Publ., West Germany, p. 179-190.
- SHESHUKOVA-PORETSUKAYA, V. S. (1967) Neogene marine diatoms of Sakhaline and Kamchatka. Leningrad Univ. Press, Leningrad, 429 p. (in Russian with English abstract).
- SIMONSEN, R. (1979) The diatom system: Ideas on phylogeny. *Bacillaria*, vol. 2, p. 9-71.
 - and KANAYA, T. (1961) Notes on the marine species of the diatom genus *Denticula* Kütz. *Internat*.

Revue Gesam. Hydrobiol., vol. 46, p. 498-513.

- TANIMURA, Y. (1989) Denticulopsis praehyalina sp. nov.: an early Middle Miocene pennate diatom from Dogo, Oki Islands, Southwest Japan. Trans. Proc. Palaeont. Soc. Japan, New Ser., no. 155, p. 169-177.
- ------ and SAITO, Y. (1986) Early Middle Miocene marine diatomite from Dogo, Oki Islands, Japan. *Memoirs National Sci. Museum, Tokyo, Japan*, vol. 19, p. 43-54.
- VAN HEURCK, H. (1880–1885) Synopsis des Diatomées de Belgique. Atlas. Decaju et Cie, Anvers.
- WEAVER, F. M. and GOMBOS. A. M. Jr. (1981) Southern high-latitude diatom biostratigraphy. Soc. Eco. Paleont. Mineral. Spec. Pub. vol. 32, p. 445-470.
- YANAGISAWA, Y., NAKAMURA, K., SUZUKI, Y., SAWAMURA, K., YOSHIDA, F., TANA-KA, K., HONDA, Y. and TANAHASHI, M. (1989) Tertiary biostratigraphy and subsurface geology of the Futaba district, Joban Coalfield, northeast Japan. Bull. Geol. Surv. Japan, vol. 40, p. 405-467 (in Japanese with English abstract).
- ZABELINA, M. M. (1934) Diatoms from the Tertiary deposits of the eastern coast of Kamtshatka. *Trans. Oil Geol. Inst., Ser. A*, vol. 48, p. 3-19 (in Russian).

Diatom genera Crucidenticula, Denticulopsis and Neodenticula (Y. Yanagisawa and F. Akiba)

海生珪藻属 Crucidenticula, Denticulopsis 及び Neodenticula 属の分類と系統

柳沢幸夫・秋葉文雄

要 旨

後期新生代海生珪藻化石層序区分の指標種を多く含む Crucidenticula, Denticulopsis 及び Neodenticula 属について,走査型電子顕微鏡及び光学顕微鏡を用いて形態観察と統計的な計測を行い,被殻の 詳しい構成・構造及び変異の幅を明らかにした。その結果に基づいて分類学的再検討を行い,新たに 15種の新タクサを識別し,2タクサについて分類階級の変更を行った。さらに,Crucidenticula 属の7 タクサ,Denticulopsis 属の23タクサ,Neodenticula 属の3タクサ,及び近縁のNitzschia 属の3種 と, "Denticula" norwegica 及び "Denticulopsis maccollumii"の2種について,詳しい記載を行った。

深海掘削計画で得られた DSDP Hole 438A 及び 438B(北西太平洋,八戸沖)と DSDP Hole 71 及び 77B(東赤道太平洋)の試料を分析して,北太平洋中-高緯度地域及び低緯度地域における 3 属の層序 的分布を明らかにするとともに,これまでに公表されているデータを基に南氷洋におけるこれらの属の 層序的分布をまとめた。また,これまでの産出報告を総括して,3 属の地理的分布特性を明らかにした。そして,形態的類似性・層序的分布及び地理的分布に基づいて,3 属の進化・系統関係を推定した。

Crucidenticula, Denticulopsis 及び Neodenticula 属は、形態的に一見非常に類似しているが、側肋の 配置、縦溝間隙の配置及び点紋の大きさ等、被殻の基本的な構造に大きな違いがある。また、化石記録 からみて、これら3属は、近縁の Nitzschia 属からそれぞれ異なった時期に独立に進化したものであ り、互いに直接的な系統関係は認められない。従って、3 属の形態の類似性は、典型的な進化的収斂で あると言える。

3 属の進化パターンは、後期新生代における海洋及び気候の変化と密接に関連している.基本的に低 緯度地域(熱帯地域)に主たる分布域を持つ Crucidenticula 属は、全世界的に温暖であった前期中新 世の中頃, Nitzschia maleinterpretaria から進化し、最も温暖であった17-16Ma 頃中-高緯度地域にも 分布域を拡大した.しかし、中期中新世以降寒冷化が進む中で次第に衰え、中期中新世末には絶滅し た. Denticulopsis 属は、中期中新世が始まる頃、Nitzschia challengeri に類似した未知の小型の Nitzschia から進化し、多くの系統に分化した.本属は起源的には寒流系であるが、14Ma 頃に起こった急激 な寒冷化に伴って赤道地域にも進出・定着し、汎世界的な分布を持つようになった.しかし、後期中新 世には全ての種が絶滅した.一方、Neodenticula 属は、Denticulopsis 属の消滅後、Nitzschia rolandii から次第に進化し、6Ma 頃急激に優勢となって現在に至っている.この属は、北半球高緯度、特に北 太平洋高緯度に分布が限定されており、南半球には分布しない.

(受付:1989年12月27日;受理:1990年3月12日)

Bulletin of the Geological Survey of Japan, Vol. 41, No. 5

Appendix 1: List and index of diatom taxa treated in this paper (genera arranged in the order treated, and species in alphabetical order)

Genus Crucidenticula Akiba et Yanagisawa 1986

| 1. | C. ikebei Akiba et Yanagisawa 1986 | p. 228 |
|----|---|--------|
| 2. | C. kanayae Akiba et Yanagisawa 1986 var. kanayae | p. 229 |
| 3. | C. kanayae var. pacifica YANAGISAWA et AKIBA 1990 n. var | p. 229 |
| 4. | C. nicobarica (GRUNOW) AKIBA et YANAGISAWA 1986 | p. 232 |
| 5. | C. paranicobarica AKIBA et YANAGISAWA 1986 var. paranicobarica | p. 231 |
| 6. | C. paranicobarica var. tropica YANAGISAWA et AKIBA 1990 n. var. | p. 230 |
| 7. | C. punctata (SCHRADER) AKIBA et YANAGISAWA 1986 | p. 232 |
| 8. | C. sawamurae YANAGISAWA et AKIBA 1990 n. sp | p. 227 |

Genus Denticulopsis SIMONSEN 1979 emend. AKIBA et YANAGISAWA 1986

| 9. | D. | barronii YANAGISAWA et AKIBA 1990 n. sp |
|-----|------------|---|
| 10. | D. | crassa Yanagisawa et Аківа 1990 n. sp |
| 11. | <i>D</i> . | delicata YANAGISAWA et AKIBA 1990 n. sp |
| 12. | <i>D</i> . | dimorpha (SCHRADER) SIMONSEN 1979 var. dimorpha p. 254 |
| 13. | <i>D</i> . | dimorpha var. areolata YANAGISAWA et AKIBA 1990 n. var p. 257 |
| 14. | <i>D</i> . | hustedtii (Simonsen et Kanaya) Simonsen 1979 emend. Yanagisawa |
| | | еt Аківа 1990 |
| 15. | <i>D</i> . | hyalina (Schrader) Simonsen 1979 |
| 16. | <i>D</i> . | <i>ichikawae</i> YANAGISAWA et AKIBA 1990 n. sp |
| 17. | <i>D</i> . | katayamae MARUYAMA 1984 emend. YANAGISAWA et AKIBA 1990 p. 245 |
| 18. | <i>D</i> . | <i>lauta</i> (BAILEY) SIMONSEN 1979 |
| 19. | <i>D</i> . | miocenica (Schrader) Simonsen 1979 emend. Yanagisawa |
| | | еt Аківа 1990 |
| 20. | <i>D</i> . | okunoi YANAGISAWA et AKIBA 1990 n. sp |
| 21. | D. | ovata (SCHRADER) YANAGISAWA et AKIBA 1990 n. comb p. 257 |
| 22. | D. | praedimorpha BARRON ex AKIBA 1982 var. praedimorpha p. 251 |
| 23. | D. | praedimorpha var. minor YANAGISAWA et AKIBA 1990 n. var p. 249 |
| 24. | <i>D</i> . | praedimorpha var. robusta YANAGISAWA et AKIBA 1990 n. var p. 252 |
| 25. | D. | praedimorpha var. intermedia YANAGISAWA et AKIBA 1990 n. var p. 252 |
| 26. | D. | <i>praehyalina</i> TANIMURA 1989 |
| 27. | <i>D</i> . | praekatayamae YANAGISAWA et AKIBA 1990 n. sp p. 244 |
| 28. | <i>D</i> . | praelauta AKIBA et KOIZUMI in AKIBA 1986 p. 234 |
| 29. | D. | simonsenii YANAGISAWA et AKIBA 1990 n. sp |
| 30. | <i>D</i> . | tanimurae YANAGISAWA et AKIBA 1990 n. sp |
| 31. | D. | vulgaris (OKUNO) YANAGISAWA et AKIBA 1990 n. comb p. 243 |

Genus Neodenticula AKIBA et YANAGISAWA 1986

| 32. | N. | kamtschatica (ZABELINA) AKIBA et YANAGISAWA 1986 | p. 259 |
|-----|----|---|--------|
| 33. | N. | koizumii Akiba et Yanagisawa 1986 | p. 262 |
| 34. | N. | seminae (SIMONSEN et KANAYA) AKIBA et YANAGISAWA 1986 | p. 263 |

Diatom genera Crucidenticula, Denticulopsis and Neodenticula (Y. Yanagisawa and F. Akiba)

Genus Nitzschia HASSALL 1845

| 35. | N. | challengeri Schrader 1973 | p. 233 |
|-----|----|---|--------|
| 36. | N. | maleinterpretaria SCHRADER 1976 | p. 226 |
| 37. | N. | rolandii Schrader 1973 emend. Harper 1977 | p. 258 |

Other species

| 38. | "Denticula" no | rwegica Schrader in Schrader et Fenner 1976 | . p. 264 |
|-----|-----------------|---|----------|
| 39. | "Denticulopsis" | maccollumii Simonsen 1979 | . p. 264 |

Appendix 2: Key to species

(Characteristics of each species are summarized in Tables A-1-3.)

Genus Crucidenticula

| 1a. | Pseudosepta absent |
|-----|---|
| 1b. | Pseudosepta present |
| 2a. | Puncta on valve face arranged in non-quincunx |
| 2b. | Puncta on valve face arranged in clear quincunx |
| 3a. | Valve linear or linear-elliptical $\ldots \ldots \ldots \ldots \ldots \ldots \ldots \ldots \ldots \ldots 4$ |
| 3b. | Valve narrowly linear and slender |
| 4a. | Valve robust with very large puncta |
| 4b. | Valve not so robust with large puncta |
| 5a. | Copula not punctated C. kanayae var. kanayae |
| 5b. | Copula punctated |
| 6a. | Valve outline linear-elliptical |
| 6b. | Valve outline linear |
| 7a. | Puncta not reduced C. paranicobarica var. tropica |
| 7b. | Puncta reduced partly C. paranicobarica var. paranicobarica |
| 8a. | Valve narrow (3.5-4.5 μ m wide) mostly without secondary |
| | pseudosepta |
| 8b. | Valve broad $(5.5-7.5 \mu\text{m} \text{ wide})$ mostly with secondary pseudosepta C. punctata |

Genus Denticulopsis

| 1a. | Pseudosepta absent |
|--------------|--|
| 1b. | $Pseudosepta \ present \ \ \ldots \ \ \ldots \ \ \ldots \ \ \ldots \ \ \ \ \ \ \ $ |
| 2a. | Marginal ribs absent or poorly developed D. praelauta |
| 2 b . | Marginal ribs developed |
| 3a. | Only one type of valve present $\ldots \ldots \ldots \ldots \ldots \ldots \ldots \ldots \ldots \ldots 4$ |
| 3b. | Two types of valves present |
| 4a. | Secondary pseudosepta absent |
| 4b. | Secondary pseudosepta present |
| 5a. | Valve not thickly silicified $\ldots \ldots 6$ |
| 5b. | Valve thickly silicified |
| 6a. | Puncta on valve face not reduced |

-273 -

Bulletin of the Geological Survey of Japan, Vol. 41, No. 5

| 6b. | Puncta on valve face reduced partly |
|---------------|---|
| 7a. | Valve outline linear or linear-elliptical D. ichikawae |
| 7b. | Valve outline oval |
| 8a. | Puncta on valve face not reduced |
| 8b. | Puncta on valve face reduced |
| 9a. | Puncta on valve face reduced partly D. praehyalina |
| 9b. | Puncta on valve face reduced completely (hyaline) |
| 10a. | Valve outline linear or linear-elliptical D. hyalina |
| 10b. | Valve outline oval D. miocenica |
| 11a. | Valve outline linear |
| 11b. | Valve outline not linear |
| 12a. | Puncta on valve face not reduced D. simonsenii |
| 12b. | Puncta on valve face reduced |
| 13a. | Valve not thickly silicified |
| 13b. | Valve thickly silicified |
| 14a. | Puncta on valve face present D. praekatayamae |
| 14b. | Valve face hyaline |
| 15 a . | Valve outline oval |
| 15b. | Valve outline lanceolate |
| 16a. | Apical thickening of closed copula present |
| 16b. | Apical thickening of closed copula absent |
| 17a. | Valve width $4-6.5 \mu m$ D. praedimorpha var. praedimorpha |
| 17b. | Valve width more than 7μ m D. praedimorpha var. robusta |
| 18a. | Secondary pseudosepta present |
| 18b. | Secondary pseudosepta absent |
| 19a. | Cross rods absent D. praedimorpha var. minor |
| 19b. | Cross rods present |
| 20a. | Cross rods partly developed D. praedimorpha var. intermedia |
| 20b. | Cross rods completely developed |
| 21 a . | Double-layered punctation absent D. dimorpha var. dimorpha |
| 21b. | Double-layered punctation present |
| 22a. | Cross rods regularly spaced D. dimorpha var. areolata |
| 22b. | Cross rods irregularly spaced |

Genus Neodenticula

| 1a. | Secondary pseudosepta absent $\ldots \ldots 2$ |
|--------------|---|
| 1b. | Secondary pseudosepta present |
| 2 a . | Pseudosepta (costae) more than 8.5 in 10 µm |
| 2b. | Pseudosepta less than 8 in $10 \mu m$ |
| 3a. | Closed copula absent |
| 3b. | Closed copula present |

| | Outline | Length | Width | Puctation on valve face | | | Rows on | Spacing of | Secondary | Type of |
|---------------------------------------|---------------------------|--------|---------|-------------------------|--------|--------------|---------|-------------|-------------|---------|
| iaxa | Outline | (µm) | (µm) | Q | Striae | Distribution | mantle | pseudosepta | pseudosepta | copula |
| Nitzschia maleinterpretaria | Linear, linear-elliptical | 8-57 | 3-6 | _ | 11-16 | Full | 1 | Absent | _ | Сор |
| Crucidenticula sawamurae | Linear | 14-51 | 3.5-5.5 | - | 11-12 | Full | 2 | 3-5 | Unclear | Cop |
| C. kanayae var. pacifica | Linear | 20-48 | 5.5-7 | — | 10-11 | Full | 2 | 3-4 | — | Сор |
| C. kanayae var. kanayae | Linear-oblong | 14-43 | 4-8 | - | 9-10 | Sporadic | 2 | ca. 3 | — | Con |
| C. ikebei | Linear-elliptical | 18-67 | 4-7 | _ | 12-16 | Full | 2 | 3-5 | _ | Сор |
| C. paranicobarica var. tropica | Narrowly Linear | 5-38 | 2-3.5 | - | 16-18 | Full | 2 | 5-6 | | Сор |
| C. paranicobarica var. paranicobarica | Narrowly linear | 8-32 | 2.5-4.5 | — | 14-16 | Reduced | 2 | 4-6 | Rare | Сор |
| C. nicobarica | Linear, linear-elliptical | 10-32 | 3.5-4.5 | + | ca. 16 | Full | 2 | 4-5 | | Cop |
| C. punctata | Linear, linear-elliptical | 20-40 | 5.5-7.5 | + | 14-15 | Full | 4 | 3-4 | 0-2 | Cop |

Table A-1 Characters useful in distinguishing taxa within the genus *Crucidenticula* and its related species.

Q; Quincunx arrangement; Striae: numbers in 10 μ m; Spacing of pseudosepta: numbers in 10 μ m; Secondary pseudosepta: numbers between each two primary pseudosepta; +: present; -: absent.

| 5 | 2 |
|---|---|
| 5 | |
| 1 | |

| Taxa | Outline | Length | Width | Puctation | | Spacing of | Secondary | Type of |
|---------------------------|---------------------------|--------|-------|-----------|--------------|---------------------------|-----------|------------|
| 1 axa | Outime | (µm) | (µm) | Striae | Distribution | on pseudosepta pseudosept | | copula |
| Nitzschia rolandii | Linear, linear-elliptical | 10-4 7 | 2-5 | ? | Full | 8.5-15 | _ | ? |
| Neodenticula kamtschatica | Linear, linear-elliptical | 9-35 | 3-6.5 | 42-44 | Full | 5-8 | | Con |
| N. koizumii | Linear, linear-elliptical | 10-42 | 3-6 | 42-44 | Full | 6-7 | 1-3 | Con |
| N. seminae | Linear, linear-elliptical | 10-60 | 4-9 | • 42-44 | Reduced | 7-9 | 2-6 | Ccm, (Con) |

Table A-2 Characters useful in distinguishing taxa within the genus Neodenticula and its related species.

Striae: numbers in 10 µm; Spacing of pseudosepta: numbers in 10 µm; Secondary pseudosepta: numbers between each two primary pseudosepta; -: absent.

Diatom genera Crucidenticula, Denticulopsis and Neodenticula (Y. Yanagisawa and F. Akiba)

| | Outline | Length | Width | P | Punctation | | | |
|-----------------------------------|---------------------------|--------|---------|----------|------------|-------------------|---------------------|--|
| Taxa | Outime | (µm) | · (μm) | Туре | Striae | Distribution | on mantle | |
| Nitzschia challengeri | Linear, linear-elliptical | 10-29 | 3.5-5.5 | Single | 18-24 | Full | Single | |
| Denticulopsis praelauta | Narrowly Linear | 6-16 | 2.5-5.5 | Single | 25-30 | Full | Single | |
| D. lauta | Linear, linear-elliptical | 7-57 | 3.5-8 | Single | 20-28 | Full | Single | |
| D. ichikawae | Linear, linear-elliptical | 9-30 | 4-6 | Single | 20-26 | Reduced | Single | |
| D. okunoi | Oval | 10-21 | 6-9.5 | Single | 22-26 | Reduced | Single | |
| D. tanimurae | Linear, linear-elliptical | 10-60 | 4-7.5 | (Single) | 20-24 | Full | Double | |
| D. praehyalina | Linear, linear-elliptical | 10-40 | 5-9 | Single | 12-24 | Reduced | Double | |
| D. hyalina | Linear, linear-elliptical | 8-36 | 3.5-7 | — | - | Hyaline | Double | |
| D. miocenica | Oval | 7.5-38 | 5.5-13 | - | | Hyaline | Double ⁰ | |
| D. simonsenii | Linear | 9-49 | 4-8 | Single | 22-24 | Full | Single | |
| D. vulgaris | Linear | 12-45 | 4-7 | Single | | Reduced | Single | |
| D. praekatayamae | Linear | 15-44 | 5-8 | Single | | Reduced sporadic | Double | |
| D. katayamae | Linear | 7-37 | 4-7 | _ | _ | Hyaline | Double | |
| D. delicata | Linear and slender | 36-53 | 5.5-6.5 | | | Seemingly hyaline | Single | |
| D. hustedtii | Elliptical, lanceolate | 9-37 | 6-10 | Single | 22-24 | Full or reduced | Single | |
| D. crassa | Oval | 10-32 | 5.5-11 | Single | 12-15 | Reduced | Double | |
| D. praedimorpha var. minor | Linear | 6-19 | 2.5-4 | Single | 24-26 | Full | Single | |
| D. praedimorpha var. praedimorpha | Linear, linear-elliptical | 9-24 | 4-6.5 | Single | 24-26 | Full | Single | |
| D. praedimorpha var. robusta | Linear-elliptical | 18-25 | 7-9 | Single | 24-26 | Full | Double | |
| D. praedimorpha var. intermedia | Linear | 13-27 | 5-6 | Single | 24-26 | Full | Single | |
| D. barronii | Linear | 10-28 | 3.5-5 | Single | 24-26 | Full | Single | |
| D. dimorpha var. dimorpha | Linear | 8-21.5 | 3-5 | Single | 24-26 | Full | Single | |
| D. dimorpha var. areolata | Linear-elliptical | 11-33 | 5-8.5 | Double | 22-25 | Full | double | |
| D. ovata | Linear, oval | 9-43 | 5.5-15 | Single | 23-26 | Full | Double | |

Table A-3 Characters useful in distinguishing taxa within the genus Denticulopsis and its related species.

Striae : numbers in 10 μ m.

-276--

| Таха | Spacing of pseudosepta | Basal ridge | Secondary pseudosepta | Marginal ribs | Type of copula | Cross rod | Other features |
|-----------------------------------|------------------------|--------------------------------------|--------------------------|---|-------------------|--------------|--------------------------------|
| Nitzschia challengeri | 9-12 | Absent | _ | _ | Сор | - | |
| Denticulopsis praelauta | 5-8 | Narrow | - | -,(+) | Cop, Con | | |
| D. lauta | 3-5 | Broad | - | + | Con, (Cop) | - | |
| D. ichikawae | 3-5 | Broad | - | + | Con | - | |
| D. okunoi | 6-7 | Narrow | _ | + | Con | - | |
| D. tanimurae | 4-5 | Broad | | + | Con | _ | Silicified |
| D. praehyalina | 3-5 | Broad | _ | + | Con | - | Silicified |
| D. hyalina | 3-4 | Broad | | + | Con | _ | Silicified |
| D. miocenica | 3.5-5 | Very broad | _ | + | Con | — | Silicified |
| D. simonsenii | 5.5-8 | Broad | 1-3 | + | Con | - | |
| D. vulgaris | 5.5-8 | Broad | 1-3 | + | Con | - | |
| D. praekatayamae | 6-7 | Broad | 1-3 | + | Con | _ | Silicified |
| D. katayamae | 6-7 | Broad | 1-3 | + | Con | _ | Silicified |
| D. delicata | 7 | Narrow | 1-2 | + | ? | | |
| D. hustedtii | 6-8 | Narrow | 1-3 | + | Con | - | |
| D. crassa | 5-6 | Very broad | 1-2 | + | Con, Ccm | - | |
| D. praedimorpha var. minor | 6-7 | Vc High, short Vo Low, indistinct | _ | +++++ | Ccr, Ccm Cop | _ | No apical thickening |
| D. praedimorpha var. praedimorpha | 5 | Vc High, short Vo Low, indistinct | _ | +++++++++++++++++++++++++++++++++++++++ | Ccr, Ccm Cop | _ | Apical thickening |
| D. praedimorpha var. robusta | 4-5 | Vc High, short Vo Low, indistinct | - | +++++ | Ccr, Ccm Cop | Partial — | Apical thickening |
| D. praedimorpha var. intermedia | 5-6 | Vc High, short Vo Low, indistinct | | +++++ | Ccr, Ccm Cop | Partial — | No apical thickening |
| D. barronii | 7.5-10 | Vc High, short Vo Low, indistinct | 1-2 | ++++++ | Ccr, Ccm Cop | | No apical thickening |
| D. dimorpha var. dimorpha | 6-7 | Vc Absent Vo Low, indistinct | | +++ | Ccr, Ccm Cop | + | |
| D. dimorpha var. areolata | 4-5 | Vc Absent Vo Low, indistinct | | ++++++ | Ccr, Ccm Cop | + - | |
| D. ovata | 5-6.5 | Vc Absent Vo Low, indistinct | | +++++ | Ccr, Ccm Cop | + _ | Cross rods unequally spaced |

Diatom genera Crucidenticula, Denticulopsis and Neodenticula (Y. Yanagisawa and F. Akiba)

Table A-3 continued

Spacing of pseudosepta: numbers in 10 µm; Secondary pseudosepta: numbers between each two primary pseudosepta; +: present; -: absent.

- 277 -

- Plate 1 Transmitted light micrographs. Scale bar equals $10 \ \mu m$ for all figures.
 - 1-4 Nitzschia maleinterpretaria SCHRADER
 1, 3, outer valve views; 2, girdle view of frustule; 4, inner valve view of intermediate form to *Crucidenticula sawamurae* with very poorly developed pseudosepta (1, 3, 4, DSDP Hole 71, 26-2, 70-72 cm; 2, DSDP Hole 71, 26-4, 70-72 cm).
 - 5-9 Crucidenticula sawamurae n. sp.
 9, holotype; 8, paratype; 5, 7-9, outer valve views; 6, girdle view of frustule (5, 7, 9, DSDP Hole 71, 25-3, 96-98 cm; 6, 8, DSDP Hole 71, 25-1, 128-130 cm).
 - 10-12 Crucidenticula ikebei AKIBA et YANAGISAWA
 10, 11, outer valve views; 12, girdle view of frustule (Sample 70-B49-1a, calcareous concretion dredged from the Bering Sea).
 - 13-16 Crucidenticula paranicobarica AKIBA et YANAGISAWA var. paranicobarica
 Outer valve views (13, Sample JOB 487, Shimotezuna Formation, North Takahagi Section, Joban Coalfield, Ibaraki, Japan ; 14, DSDP Hole 438A, 73-5, 9-11 cm ; 15, DSDP Hole 438A, 72-3, 15-17 cm ; 16, Sample JDS-4685, Masuporo Formation, Tenpoku area, northern Hokkaido, Japan).
 - 17-22 Crucidenticula paranicobarica var. tropica n. var.
 19, holotype, 17, paratype; 17-21, outer valve views, 22, girdle view of frustule (17, DSDP Hole 71, 21-4, 60-62 cm; 18-20, 22, DSDP Hole 71, 21-2, 89-91 cm; 21, Ab-11, Nishimyo Formation, Sumon area, Niigata, Japan).
 - 23-29 Crucidenticula nicobarica (GRUNOW) AKIBA et YANAGISAWA
 23-27, 29, outer valve views; 28, girdle view of frustule (23, DSDP Hole 77B, 22-6, 35-37 cm; 24, DSDP Hole 77B, 24-6, 20-22 cm; 25, 27, 28, Sample NKW 166, Taga Formation, Shinkawa Section, Katta area, Ibaraki, Japan; 26, DSDP Hole 438A, 72-3, 15-17 cm; 29, DSDP Hole 77B, 22-6, 35-37 cm).
 - 30-32 Crucidenticula punctata (SCHRADER) AKIBA et YANAGISAWA
 30, 31, outer valve views of valve ; 32, inner valve view of valve (30, DSDP Hole 77B, 20-6, 38-40 cm ; 31, DSDP Hole 438A, 64-3, 10-14 cm ; 32, DSDP Hole 77B, 22-2, 35-37 cm)
 - 33-35 Crucidenticula kanayae AKIBA et YANAGISAWA var. kanayae
 33, 35, outer valve views; 34, inner valve view (Sample 70-B49-1a, calcareous concretion dredged from the Bering Sea).
 - 36-38 Crucidenticula kanayae var. pacifica n. var.
 38, holotype; 37, paratype; 36, outer valve view; 37, inner valve view; 38, girdle view of valve with punctated copula (36, 38, DSDP Hole 71, 22-6, 116-118 cm; 37, DSDP Hole 71, 23 -2, 117-119 cm).
 - 39 Crucidenticula kanayae AKIBA et YANAGISAWA var. kanayae Girdle view of valve (Sample 70-B49-1a, calcareous concretion dredged from the Bering Sea)
 - 40 *"Denticula" norwegica* SCHRADER Outer valve view (Sample JOB 423, Taga Formation, Hirakata, Joban Coalfield, Ibaraki, Japan).

.



Plate 2 Transmitted light micrographs. Scale bar equals 10 μ m for all figures.

1, 2, 10 Nitzschia challengeri SCHRADER

1, girdle view of frustule; 2. 10, outer valve views (1, DSDP Hole 438A, 67-1, 112-113 cm; 2, Sample JOB 423, Taga Formation, Hirakata, Joban Coalfield. Ibaraki, Japan; 10, Sample N 58, Hataya Formation, Matsushima area. Miyagi, Japan).

- 3-5 Denticulopsis praelauta AKIBA et KOIZUMI 3, 4, outer valve views of primitive form with no marginal rib; 5, outer valve view of advanced form with indistinct marginal ribs (3, DSDP Hole 438B, 8-1, 90-92 cm; 4, 5, Sample N 575, Otsuka Formation, Matsushima area, Miyagi, Japan).
- 6-8 Denticulopsis lauta (BAILEY) SIMONSEN Outer valve views (6, DSDP Hole 71, 22-2, 88-90 cm; 7, Sample N 665, Otsuka Formation, Matsushima area, Miyagi, Japan; 8, JDS 15816 = GC 803-9, Southern Ocean).
- 9, 11-13 Denticulopsis ichikawae n. sp.
 12, holotype; all outer valve views (9, Sample N 665, Otsuka Formation, Matsushima area, Miyagi, Japan; 11-13, DSDP Hole 438A, 79-1, 51-54 cm).
 - 14 Denticulopsis hyalina (SCHRADER) SIMONSEN Girdle view of frustule (DSDP Hole 438A, 71-3, 7-11 cm).
 - 15 Denticulopsis lauta (BAILEY) SIMONSEN Girdle view of frustule (Sample NKW 14, Genjigawa Formation, Zuiryu Section, Hitachi-ota, Ibaraki, Japan).
 - 16-18 Denticulopsis praelauta AKIBA et KOIZUMI Girdle views of frustule ; 16, heterovalvate frustule with an open non-punctated copula (Con) and an open punctated copula (Cop) ; 17, homovalvate frustule with two open punctated copulae (Cop) ; 18, homovalvate frustule with two open non-punctated copulae (Con) (16, DSDP Hole 438B, 7-1, 128-130 cm ; 17, DSDP Hole 438B, 8-1, 90-92 cm ; 18, Sample N 575, Otsuka Formation, Matsushima area, Miyagi, Japan).
 - 19-25 Denticulopsis okunoi n. sp.
 22, holotype ; 19-24, outer valve views ; 25, inner valve view (19, 24, Sample JOB 422 ; 20-23, 25, Sample JOB 423, Taga Formation, Hirakata, Joban Coalfield, Ibaraki, Japan).
 - 26, 27 Denticulopsis tanimurae n. sp.
 27, holotype; outer valve views (26, DSDP Hole 438A, 72-3, 15-17 cm; 27, DSDP Hole 438A, 71-3, 7-11 cm).
 - 28-32 Denticulopsis praehyalina TANIMURA
 Outer valve views (28, DSDP Hole 438A, 71-3, 7-11 cm; 29, DSDP Hole 438A, 70-7, 5-7 cm; 30, 32, DSDP Hole 438A, 70-3, 49-53 cm; 31, DSDP Hole 438A, 69 cc).
 - 33, 34 Denticulopsis hyalina (SCHRADER) SIMONSEN Outer valve views (33, DSDP Hole 438A, 72-1, 14-18 cm; 34, DSDP Hole 438A, 71-3, 7-11 cm).
 - 35-37 Denticulopsis miocenica (SCHRADER) SIMONSEN
 35, 37, outer valve views; 36, inner valve view (Sample JDS-5801, an exotic block in the Chokubetsu Formation, Kushiro Coalfield, eastern Hokkaido, Japan).
 - 38 Yoshidaia divergens KOMURA Outer valve view of valve (This form is possibly an initial valve of *Denticulopsis lauta* (BAILEY) SIMONSEN; DSDP Hole 438A, 79-1, 51-54 cm).
 - 39-41 "Denticulopsis" maccollumii SIMONSEN
 39, outer valve views of valve; 40, possibly outer valve view of initial valve; 41, inner valve view (ETL PC-16, 36-16, 588-560 cm, Southern Ocean).
 - 42, 43 Nitzschia denticuloides SCHRADER
 42, outer valve view of valve with weakly developed transapical costae; 43, outer valve view of valve with well developed transapical costae (ETL PC-16, 36-16, 588-560 cm).
 - 44 Katahiraia aspera KOMURA Outer valve view of valve (This form is possibly an initial valve of *Denticulopsis miocenica* (SCHRADER) SIMONSEN; JDS-5801, an exotic block in the Chokubetsu Formation, Kushiro Coalfield, eastern Hokkaido, Japan).
 - 45 Katahiraia oblonga KOMURA Outer valve view of valve (This form is possibly an initial valve of *Denticulopsis hyalina* (SCHRADER) SIMONSEN ; DSDP Hole 438A, 70-3, 49-53 cm).

.



- Plate 3 Transmitted light micrographs. Scale bars equal 10 μ m. Bar B for Fig. 15 and bar A for all other figures.
 - 1-3 Denticulopsis simonsenii n. sp.
 1, holotype; all outer valve views (1, 2, Sample N 58, Hataya Formation, Matsushima area, Miyagi, Japan; 3, DSDP Hole 77B, 20- 6, 38-40 cm).
 - 4-8 Denticulopsis vulgaris (OKUNO) n. comb.
 Outer valve views (4, Bore hole A-1, 86.00-86.15m in YANAGISAWA et al., 1989, Futaba area, Fukushima, Japan; 5, 7, 8, DSDP Hole 438A, 57-4, 59-60 cm; 6, DSDP Hole 438A, 59-4, 17 -21 cm).
 - 9-11 Denticulopsis praekatayamae n. sp.
 10, holotype; all outer valve views (9, JDS 15775 = GC801-5, Southern Ocean; 10, DSDP Hole 438A, 56 cc; 11, DSDP Hole 77B, 18-2, 23-25 cm).
 - 12, 13 Denticulopsis katayamae MARUYAMA Outer valve views (12, DSDP Hole 438A, 56 cc ; 13, DSDP Hole 438A, 53-1, 77-81 cm).
 - 14-18 Denticulopsis hustedtii (SIMONSEN and KANAYA) SIMONSEN
 15, holotype; all outer valve views (14, DSDP Hole 226, 10-5, 87-90 cm; 15, Sample 23 of SIMONSEN and KANAYA, 1961, Del Monte, Monterey County, California; 16, 17, DSDP Hole 438A, 61 cc; 18, DSDP 438A, 62-1, 20-24 cm).
 - 19 Denticulopsis hustedtii (SIMONSEN et KANAYA) SIMONSEN Copula (DSDP Hole 266, 10-5, 87-90 cm).
 - 20 Denticulopsis praekatayamae n. sp. Girdle views of frustule (DSDP Hole 77B, 18-2, 23-25 cm).
 - 21-27 Denticulopsis crassa n. sp.
 23, holotype; 21, open copula; 22, 25, closed copulae; 23, 24, 26, 27, outer valve views (21, 22, 24, DSDP Hole 438A, 62-1, 20-24 cm; 23, DSDP Hole 438A, 65-7, 17-18 cm; 25, DSDP Hole 438A, 64-5, 30-32 cm; 26, DSDP Hole 266, 10-1, 80-83 cm; 27, DSDP Hole 438A, 59-5, 17-21 cm).
 - 28 Denticulopsis katayamae MARUYAMA (oval form) Outer valve view (DSDP Hole 438A, 53-1, 77-81 cm).
 - 29 Yoshidaia loculata KOMURA Outer valve view of valve (This form is possibly an initial valve of *Denticulopsis vulgaris* (OKUNO) n. comb.; Wk 205, Nakayama Formation, Sado Island, Japan).

.



- Plate 4 Transmitted light micrographs. Scale bar equals $10 \mu m$ for all figures.
 - 1, 2 Denticulopsis praedimorpha var. minor n. var.
 1, outer valve view of Vc valve with a closed copula ; 2, outer valve view of Vo valve (DSDP 438A, 66 -1, 118-122 cm).
 - 3-5 Denticulopsis praedimorpha BARRON ex AKIBA var. praedimorpha
 3, outer valve view of Vc valve ; 4, outer valve view of Vo valve ; 5, girdle view of frustule with two Cop copulae (3, 4, JDS 8865, Masuura Formation, Abashiri area, eastern Hokkaido, Japan ; 5, DSDP Hole 438A, 65-3, 100-103 cm).
 - 6, 7 Denticulopsis praedimorpha var. robusta n. var.
 6, outer valve view of Vc valve; 7, outer valve view of Vc valve with a closed copula (DSDP Hole 438A, 64-3, 10-14 cm).
- 8, 9, 11 Denticulopsis praedimorpha var. minor n. var.
 8, holotype; 8, 9, valve views of closed copulae; 11, girdle view of closed copula with smooth edge (Ccm) (8, DSDP Hole 438A, 66-1, 121-123 cm; 9, 11, JDS-8865, Masuura Facies, Abashiri Formation, Abashiri area, eastern Hokkaido, Japan).
- 10,12-17 Denticulopsis praedimorpha BARRON ex AKIBA var. praedimorpha 10, girdle view of closed copula with serrate edge (Ccr); 12-14, valve views of closed copulae; 15, girdle view of Vo valve with a Cop copula; 16, girdle view of frustule with two Ccm copulae; 17, girdle view of frustule with Ccr and Cop copulae (JDS-8865, Masuura Facies, Abashiri Formation, Abashiri area, eastern Hokkaido, Japan).
 - 18-20 Denticulopsis praedimorpha var. robusta n. var.
 19, holotype ; valve views of closed copulae (DSDP Hole 438A, 64-3, 10-14 cm).
 - 21-24 Denticulopsis praedimorpha var. minor n. var.
 21, girdle view of Vc valve with a Ccr copula, also with a Cop copula of epitheca; 22, girdle view of Vc valve with a Ccr copula; 23, girdle view of frustule with Ccr and Cop copulae; 24, girdle view of frustule with two Ccm copulae (21, 22, DSDP Hole 438A, 66-1, 118-122 cm; 23, 24, JDS-8865, Masuura Facies, Abashiri Formation, Abashiri area, eastern Hokkaido, Japan).
 - 25-33 Denticulopsis barronii n. sp. 25, outer valve view of Vo valve; 26-30, valve views of closed copulae; 31, outer valve view of Vc valve; 32, girdle view of Vc valve with a Ccr copula; 33, girdle view of Vc valve with a Ccm copula (DSDP Hole 77B, 20-6, 38-40 cm).
 - 34, 35 Denticulopsis praedimorpha var. robusta n. var.
 34, girdle view of frustule with Cop and Ccr copulae ; 35, girdle view of frustule with two Ccr copulae (DSDP Hole 438A, 64-3, 10-14 cm).
 - 36-38 Denticulopsis barronii n. sp.
 37, holotype ; 36, 37, valve views of Vc valve with a closed copula ; 38, valve view of open copula with punctated sides (Cop) (DSDP Hole 77B, 20-6, 38-40 cm).
 - 39 Denticulopsis praedimorpha BARRON ex AKIBA var. praedimorpha Valve view of open copula with punctated sides (Cop). (JDS-8865, Masuura Facies, Abashiri Formation, Abashiri area, eastern Hokkaido, Japan).
 - 40, 41 Denticulopsis dimorpha var. areolata n. var.
 40, valve view of closed copula ; 41, girdle view of closed copula with serrate edge (Ccr) (DSDP Hole 438A, 56 cc).
 - 42-49 Denticulopsis dimorpha (SCHRADER) SIMONSEN var. dimorpha 42, girdle view of closed copula with smooth edge (Ccm); 43, valve view of closed copula; 44, outer valve view of Vo valve; 45, girdle view of frustule with Ccr and Cop copulae; 46, girdle view of frustule with Ccr and Ccm copulae; 47, outer valve view of transitional form to var. areolata (Note slightly developed double-layered punctation on valve face.); 48, outer valve view of Vc valve; 49, outer valve view of Vc valve with a closed copula (42, 47, DSDP Hole 438A, 57-4, 59-60 cm; 43, 44, 46, 48, 49, DSDP Hole 438A, 59-5, 17-21 cm; 45, DSDP Hole 438A, 56 cc).
 - 50-54 Denticulopsis dimorpha var. areolata n. var.
 54, holotype; 50, outer valve view of Vc valve; 51, 54, girdle view of frustule with Ccr and Cop copulae;
 52, valve view of open copula with punctated sides (Cop); 53, girdle view of Vc valve with a Ccr copula (DSDP Hole 438A, 56 cc).

.



Plate 5 Transmitted light micrographs. Scale bar equals $10 \ \mu m$ for all figures.

- 1-3 Denticulopsis lauta (BAILEY) SIMONSEN (Sample N 665, Otsuka Formation, Matsushima area, Japan)
- 4-12 Denticulopsis praedimorpha BARRON ex AKIBA var. praedimorpha (JDS-8865, Masuura Facies, Abashiri Formation, Abashiri area, eastern Hokkaido, Japan)
- 13-17 Denticulopsis dimorpha var. areolata n. var. (DSDP Hole 438A, 56cc)

Vc: Vc valve (Valve connecting with closed copula) Vo: Vo valve (Valve connecting with open copula) Con: open copula with non-punctated sides Cop: open copula with punctated sides Ccr: closed copula with serrate edge Ccm: closed copula with smooth edge Cc: closed copula

a new second second

Plate 5

| | D. lauta | D. praedimorpha v. praedimorpha | D. dimorpha v. areolata |
|----------|----------|--|----------------------------|
| Valve | | | Vc 13 |
| Copula | Con | $ \begin{array}{c} $ | Ccr Cop |
| Frustule | 3 | | 17 |

-287-

Plate 6 Transmitted light micrographs. Scale bar equals $10 \ \mu m$ for all figures.

- 1-5 Denticulopsis dimorpha var. areolata n. var.
 1, 4, outer valve views of valve; 2, outer valve view of Vc valve with a closed copula; 3, inner valve view of Vc valve with a closed copula; 5, open copula with punctated sides (Cop) (DSDP Hole 266, 10-1, 80-83 cm, Southern Ocean)
- 6-14 Denticulopsis ovata (SCHRADER) n. comb.
 6, 10, 11, outer valve views of Vc valve with a closed copula ; 7-9, outer valve views of Vo valve ; 12, possibly outer valve view of initial valve ; 13, inner valve view of Vc valve with a closed copula with serrate edge (Ccr) ; 14, open copula with punctated sides (Cop)(DSDP Hole 266, 10-1, 80-83 cm, Southern Ocean)
- 15-23 Denticulopsis dimorpha var. areolata n. var.
 Closed copulae (note serrate edge of Fig. 17, and smooth edge of Fig. 19) (15, DSDP Hole 266, 10-5, 87-90 cm; 16-23, DSDP Hole 266, 10-1, 80-83 cm, Southern Ocean)

24-32 Denticulopsis ovata (SCHRADER) n. comb. Closed copulae (Note serrate edge of Fig. 27) (DSDP Hole 266, 10-1, 80-83 cm, Southern Ocean)

. .



- 289 -

- Plate 7 Transmitted light micrographs. Scale bar equals $10 \ \mu m$ for all figures.
 - 1-4 Denticulopsis delicata n. sp.
 Outer valve views; 1, holotype (DSDP Hole 266, 10-5, 87-90 cm, Southern Ocean)
 - 5, 6 Denticulopsis praedimorpha var. minor n. var. Outer valve views (DSDP Hole 266, 10-5, 87-90 cm, Southern Ocean)
 - 7-9 Denticulopsis praedimorpha var. intermedia n. var.
 Outer valve views (7, DSDP Hole 266, 10-5, 87-90 cm; 8, 9, DSDP Hole 266, 10-1, 80-83 cm, Southern Ocean)
 - Denticulopsis praedimorpha var. minor n. var. Closed copula (DSDP Hole 266, 10-5, 87-90 cm, Southern Ocean)
 - 11-13 Denticulopsis praedimorpha var. intermedia n. var.
 Closed copulae ; 13, holotype (DSDP Hole 266, 10-5, 87-90 cm, Southern Ocean)
 - 14-16 Denticulopsis dimorpha (SCHRADER) SIMONSEN var. dimorpha Closed copulae (DSDP Hole 266, 10-3, 77-80 cm, Southern Ocean)
 - 17-19 Nitzschia rolandii SCHRADER (primitive asymmetric form)
 Outer valve views of valve (17, 18, Bore hole A-1, 86.00-86.15 m, Futaba area, Fukushima Prefecture, Japan, *Thalassiosira yabei* Zone, 19, DSDP Hole 438A, 42-1, 14-18 cm)
 - 20-22 Nitzschia rolandii SCHRADER (primitive symmetric form)
 Outer valve views of valve (20, 22, DSDP Hole 438A, 40-6, 10-14 cm ; 21, DSDP Hole 438A, 41cc)
 - 23-26 Nitzschia rolandii SCHRADER (advanced form)
 Outer valve views of valve (23, DSDP Hole 438A, 43-1, 59-63 cm ; 24, DSDP Hole 438A, 41
 -6, 10-14 cm ; 25, DSDP Hole 438A, 42-6, 16-20 cm ; 26, DSDP Hole 438A, 41cc)
 - 27-37 Neodenticula kamtschatica (ZABELINA) AKIBA et YANAGISAWA
 27, 28, 30, 33-37, outer valve views of valve; 29, girdle view of frustule; 31, open copula with non-punctated sides (Con); 32, inner valve view of valve (27, DSDP Hole 438A, 42-1, 14-18 cm; 28, DSDP Hole 438A, 41 cc; 29, JDS-8659, Atsunai Formation, Atsunai area, eastern Hokkaido, Japan; 30, 31, DSDP Hole 438A, 13-3, 19-23 cm; 32, DSDP Hole 438A, 41 cc; 33, JDS-8623, Atsunai Formation, Atsunai area, eastern Hokkaido, Japan; 34, JDS-8629, Atsunai Formation, Atsunai area, eastern Hokkaido, Japan; 34, JDS-8629, Atsunai Formation, Atsunai area, eastern Hokkaido, Japan; 35-37, DSDP Hole 438A, 13-3, 19-23 cm). Note very fine puncta on valve face in Figs. 30 and 37. The two figures were photographed with oblique illumination.
 - 38-41 Neodenticula koizumii AKIBA et YANAGISAWA
 38-40, outer valve views of valve; 41, open copula with non-punctated sides (Con) (38-40, JDS-8869, Atsunai Formation, Atsunai area, eastern Hokkaido, Japan; 41, DSDP Hole 438A, 5 cc)
 - 42-44 Neodenticula koizumii AKIBA et YANAGISAWA (oval form) = Neodenticula sp. A of AKIBA and YANAGISAWA (1986)
 Outer valve views (42, 44, DSDP Hole 438A, 5 cc; 43, JDS-8634, Shiranuka Formation, Atsunai area, eastern Hokkaido, Japan)
 - 45-49 Neodenticula seminae (SIMONSEN et KANAYA) AKIBA et YANAGISAWA
 45, possibly outer valve view of initial valve; 46, 48, outer valve views of valve; 47, inner valve view of valve; 49, closed copula with smooth edge (Ccm) (Sample 1954. 4. 20, a net sample collected off Kuril Islands by Dr. H. TAKANO)

Plate 7



- 291 -

Plate 8 Scanning electron micrographs. White scale bars equal 5 μ m and a black bar equals 0.1 μ m.

1-7 Nitzschia maleinterpretaria SCHRADER

1, outer valve view ; 2, enlargement of Fig. 1 showing apical part of valve ; 3, enlargement of Fig. 1 showing central part of valve (Arrow indicates interruption of raphe slit) ; 4, inner valve view ; 5, oblique girdle view ; 6, 7, inner valve views (stereoscopic pair) (Sample P 225, 7-20, eastern equatorial Pacific, the *Triceratium pileus* Zone).

- 8-13 Crucidenticula ikebei AKIBA et YANAGISAWA
 8, outer valve view; 9, enlargement of Fig. 8 showing central part of valve; 10, enlargement of Fig. 8 showing apical part of valve; 11, girdle view; 12, inner oblique view of valve apex; 13, inner oblique view of central part of valve (Note a large central portula) (Sample 70-B49 -1a, calcareous concretion dredged in the Bering Sea).
- 14-17 *Crucidenticula kanayae* AKIBA et YANAGISAWA var. *kanayae*14, oblique view of frustule; 15, narrow girdle view of frustule; 16, isolated deck of valve;
 17, oblique view of broken valve (Sample 70-B49-1a, calcareous concretion dredged from the Bering Sea).
 - 18 "Denticula" norwegica SCHRADER Oval areolae occluded by mesh-like cribra (Sample JDS-11171, Matsushima Formation, Shiogama area, Miyagi, Japan).

.



Plate 9 Scanning electron micrographs. Scale bars equal $5 \,\mu m$.

- 1 Denticulopsis lauta (BAILEY) SIMONSEN Outer valve view (DSDP Hole 438A, 73-3, 27-31 cm).
- 2-4 Denticulopsis ichikawae n. sp.
 2, 4, outer valve views; 3, inner valve view (Sample N 665, Otsuka Formation, Matsushima area, Miyagi, Japan).
- 5-7 *Denticulopsis praehyalina* TANIMURA 5, 6, outer valve views; 7, oblique view of frustule (DSDP Hole 438A, 70-5, 23-27 cm).
- 8, 9 Denticulopsis hyalina (SCHRADER) SIMONSEN Outer valve views (DSDP Hole 438A, 70-5, 23-27 cm).
- 10, 11 Yoshidaia divergens KOMURA
 Outer valve view of frustule (This form is possibly an initial valve of *Denticulopsis lauta* (BAILEY) SIMONSEN; DSDP Hole 438A, 73-3, 27-31 cm).
- 12-16 Nitzschia challengeri SCHRADER

12, oblique view of two valves attached on valve faces; 13, enlargement of Fig. 12 showing central part of valve; 14, inner valve view; 15, enlargement of Fig. 14 showing apical part of valve; 16, enlargement of Fig. 14 showing central part of valve (Sample N 575, Matsushima Formation, Matsushima area, Miyagi, Japan).

Plate 9



. - 295 -

Plate 10 Scanning electron micrographs. Scale bars equal $5 \mu m$.

1, 2 Nitzschia challengeri SCHRADER

Outer valve views (Sample N 575, Otsuka Formation, Matsushima area, Miyagi, Japan)

3-9 Katahiraia aspera KOMURA

This form is possibly an initial valve of *Denticulopsis miocenica* (SCHRADER) SIMONSEN; 3, oblique outer valve view 4, outer valve view; 5, enlargement of Fig. 4 showing central part of valve and interrupted slit of raphe; 6, oblique narrow girdle views; 7, 8, inner valve views; 9, broad girdle view (Sample JDS-5801, an exotic block in Chokubetsu Formation, Atsunai area, eastern Hokkaido, Japan)

.

Plate 10



Plate 11 Scanning electron micrographs. Scale bars equal $10 \ \mu m$.

- 1 Denticulopsis simonsenii n. sp. Outer valve view (Sample N 58, Hataya Formation, Matsushima area, Miyagi, Japan).
- 2 Denticulopsis vulgaris (OKUNO) n. comb. Outer valve view (DSDP Hole 438A, 57-4, 59-60 cm).
- 3 *Denticulopsis praekatayamae* n. sp. Outer valve view (DSDP Hole 438A, 56cc).
- 4 Denticulopsis katayamae MARUYAMA Outer valve view (DSDP Hole 438A, 56cc).
- 5 Denticulopsis simonsenii n. sp. Outer valve view (Sample N 58, Hataya Formation, Matsushima area, Miyagi, Japan).
- 6-10 Denticulopsis vulgaris (OKUNO) n. comb.
 6, outer valve view; 7, 8, inner valve views; 9, 10, outer valve views (6-8, DSDP Hole 438A, 57-4, 59-60 cm; 9, 10, Sample Mj 151-2 from Miocene deposits of Chile collected by Dr. K. SAWAMURA).
- 11-13 Denticulopsis hustedtii (SIMONSEN et KANAYA) SIMONSEN Inner valve views (DSDP Hole 438A, 62-1, 20-24 cm).
- 14-16 Denticulopsis praekatayamae n. sp. Outer valve views (DSDP Hole 438A, 56cc).

.



- Plate 12 Scanning electron micrographs. Scale bars equal 10 μ m.
 - 1-8 Denticulopsis crassa n. sp.
 1, 2, outer valve views ; 3, 4, inner valve views ; 5, inner oblique view ; 6, outer oblique view ;
 7, closed copula ; 8, open copula (1-7, DSDP Hole 438A, 65-7, 17-18 cm ; 8, DSDP Hole 438A, 62-1, 20-24 cm).
 - 9 Denticulopsis praedimorpha var. minor n. var. Closed copula (DSDP Hole 438A, 66-1, 118-122 cm).
 - 10-14 Denticulopsis praedimorpha var. robusta n. var.
 10, 11, closed copula; 12, 13, inner valve views of Vc valve; 14, inner oblique view of Vc valve (DSDP Hole 438A, 64-3, 10-14 cm). Note double-layered punctation on the mantle of valve in Fig. 14.
 - 15, 16 Denticulopsis dimorpha var. areolata n. var.
 Outer oblique views of partly dissolved valve showing double-layered punctation on valve face and mantle (DSDP Hole 438A, 56cc).

• • • •

